Contents

Introduction ................................................................. 1
PerfectScript macros ..................................................... 3
Quattro Pro macros ....................................................... 127
VBA macros ................................................................. 133
Glossary ................................................................. 173
Index ................................................................. 183
Introduction

Welcome to the Corel® WordPerfect® Office X6 Macro Guide!

This resource contains the following sections:

• PerfectScript macros
• Quattro Pro macros
• VBA macros
• Glossary

PerfectScript macros

PerfectScript™ is a command-based macro-programming language that you can use to automate tasks in Corel® WordPerfect®, Corel® Quattro Pro®, and Corel® Presentations™. This resource contains basic information about creating simple PerfectScript macros, as well as detailed, technical information about creating more complex PerfectScript macros.

This section contains the following topics:

• “Understanding PerfectScript macros” on page 5 — explains the concepts that are associated with macros, and shows how these concepts apply to PerfectScript macros.
• “Getting started with PerfectScript macros” on page 65 — introduces you to the PerfectScript utility, which you can use to create macros quickly and easily.
• “Creating PerfectScript macros” on page 69 — examines how to create macros, either by migrating ones that already exist or by recording or writing new ones.
• “Creating UI for PerfectScript macros” on page 79 — describes how to use a dialog box to create an interface between the application and the user.
• “Debugging PerfectScript macros” on page 105 — demonstrates how to find and correct any errors in your macros.

Quattro Pro macros

Quattro Pro macros are stored in notebook cells. Use this type of macro when a task is performed within Quattro Pro.

This section contains the following topics:

• “Understanding Quattro Pro macros” on page 129 — provides a brief introduction to Quattro Pro macros.
• “Working with Quattro Pro macros” on page 131 — helps you create and edit, play and debug, and convert Quattro Pro macros.

VBA macros

Microsoft® Visual Basic® for Applications (more commonly known as VBA) is a built-in programming language that can automate repetitive functions and create intelligent solutions in WordPerfect Office X6. If VBA 6.3 is installed on your computer, you can access the VBA Editor from within WordPerfect, Quattro Pro, and Presentations.

VBA 6.3 is not included with WordPerfect Office X6. To use VBA macros, you must separately install VBA 6.3.
This section contains the following topics:

- “Understanding VBA macros” on page 135 — provides a brief introduction to VBA.
- “Getting started with VBA macros” on page 147 — lets you explore the VBA workspace in WordPerfect, Quattro Pro, and Presentations.
- “Working with VBA macros” on page 157 — shows you how to create, run, and debug macros.
- “Creating UI for VBA macros” on page 163 — demonstrates how to provide dialog boxes, toolbars and buttons, user interaction, and help for your macros.
- “Organizing and deploying VBA macros” on page 171 — helps you organize and deploy the macros you create.

Glossary

This resource also contains a glossary (see page 173).

Please see the Macro Help (psh.chm) for detailed documentation on the available macro commands, as well as a gallery of sample macros.
# PerfectScript macros

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Understanding PerfectScript macros</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Getting started with PerfectScript macros</td>
<td>65</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Creating PerfectScript macros</td>
<td>69</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Creating UI for PerfectScript macros</td>
<td>79</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Debugging PerfectScript macros</td>
<td>105</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Understanding PerfectScript macros

When performing repetitive or complex tasks in WordPerfect Office, you can save time by using PerfectScript macros. In this section, you’ll learn the concepts that are associated with macros, and you’ll learn how these concepts apply to PerfectScript macros.

This section contains the following topics:

- “Understanding PerfectScript macro concepts” on page 5
- “Using expressions in PerfectScript macro statements” on page 9
- “Using command statements in PerfectScript macros” on page 37
- “Using assignment statements in PerfectScript macros” on page 42
- “Using conditional statements in PerfectScript macros” on page 42
- “Using loop statements in PerfectScript macros” on page 45
- “Using calling statements in PerfectScript macros” on page 46
- “Using comment statements in PerfectScript macros” on page 60
- “Accessing external applications in PerfectScript macros” on page 60
- “Learning more about PerfectScript macros” on page 63

Understanding PerfectScript macro concepts

A macro specifies a sequence of actions that you can quickly repeat later. For example, a macro can automate a WordPerfect task such as setting the margins, selecting a font, or creating a merge file.

To create macros for WordPerfect Office, you can use the PerfectScript macro-programming language. PerfectScript is called a “command-based language” because it uses macro commands to store the results of an action rather than storing the individual steps that are used to carry out that action.

You can also create macros for Quattro Pro by using the native macro-programming language for the application. For information, see “Quattro Pro macros” on page 127.

You can also use Microsoft Visual Basic for Applications (VBA) to create macros for WordPerfect Office. For information, see “VBA macros” on page 133.

A macro consists of a set of instructions or statements. By using the various types of macro statements, you can create PerfectScript macros that automate anything from a basic task to a complex procedure. For more information about macro statements, see “Understanding PerfectScript macro statements” on page 6.

Through the use of macro statements, PerfectScript lets you create macros that access applications outside of WordPerfect Office. For more information, see “Accessing external applications in PerfectScript macros” on page 60.

For even more information about macros, you can consult additional resources for WordPerfect Office. For information, see “Learning more about PerfectScript macros” on page 63.

The proper form of macro components is governed by a set of rules, or syntax. For more information about macro syntax, see “Understanding PerfectScript macro syntax” on page 6.

If you structure your macros well, they will function well — and be much easier to edit. For more information about macro structure, see “Understanding PerfectScript macro structure” on page 6.
Understanding PerfectScript macro statements

If a macro represents a set of instructions, then a macro statement represents a single step in those instructions. The simplest macro consists of only one statement, while the most complex macro consists of multiple statements that are performed in sequence.

A group of related statements is called a “statement block.”

Some statements require an expression, which is a formula that represents a value. For more information about expressions, see “Using expressions in PerfectScript macro statements” on page 9.

By combining expressions with other macro components, you can create any of the following types of statements:

• command statements — consist of a macro command, which represents a single instruction (typically, an action). For more information, see “Using command statements in PerfectScript macros” on page 37.

• assignment statements — assign a value to an expression. For more information, see “Using assignment statements in PerfectScript macros” on page 42.

• conditional statements — execute a statement (or a group of statements) when a specified condition is met. For more information, see “Using conditional statements in PerfectScript macros” on page 42.

• loop statements — execute a statement (or a group of statements) a specified number of times until (or while) an expression is true. For more information, see “Using loop statements in PerfectScript macros” on page 45.

• calling statements — call a statement (or a group of statements). For more information, see “Using calling statements in PerfectScript macros” on page 46.

• comment statements — contain notes that explain the purpose of a macro without affecting its play. For more information, see “Using comment statements in PerfectScript macros” on page 60.

Understanding PerfectScript macro syntax

The proper form of macro components is governed by a set of rules, or syntax. For a macro to work properly, its code must use the correct syntax — that is, the code must be “syntactically correct.”

For each macro component that is described in this documentation, details on proper macro syntax are included.

Some macro statements are too lengthy to fit into a single line of macro code. If your macro editor automatically inserts a hard return at the end of every line, you must insert an underscore character (_ _) at the end of each line that wraps. For information on specifying a macro editor, see “To specify settings for editing macros” on page 67.

Understanding PerfectScript macro structure

If you structure your macros well, they will function well — and be much easier to edit.

You can structure a macro in several ways. The basic function of a macro is to accomplish a task by following a series of steps, so the ideal structure for a macro depends on the task involved — and on the amount of code that is required to carry out that task. For example, if a macro involves multiple tasks that require large amounts of code, you can make the macro more manageable by breaking it into smaller pieces (called subroutines — see “Understanding subroutines” on page 46).

From a structural standpoint, the two main types of macros are as follows:
• **sequential macros** — progress in steps from start to finish. For more information, see “Understanding sequential macros” on page 7.
• **procedural macros** — progress in steps based on user intervention. For more information, see “Understanding procedural macros” on page 7.

**Understanding sequential macros**

A sequential macro progresses in steps from start to finish. All steps are taken in the required order, and the code is written to suit that purpose.

An example of a sequential macro follows:

```
HardReturn ()
HardReturn ()
getString( var1; "Enter Name"; "Data Entry"; 100 )
Type (Text: var1)
HardReturn ()
getString( var2; "Enter Address"; "Data Entry"; 100 )
Type( var2 )
HardReturn ()
HardReturn ()
Type (Text: "Dear " + var1 + ":")
HardReturn ()
HardReturn ()
Type (Text: "Yaddah Yaddah Yaddah")
HardReturn ()
HardReturn ()
HardReturn ()
Type (Text: "Sincerely,"
HardReturn ()
HardReturn ()
HardReturn ()
Type (Text: "Paul McRussell")
HardReturn ()
Type (Text: "Manager, Eat-a-Chicken Burger, Anywhere, USA")
```

**Understanding procedural macros**

A procedural macro progresses in steps based on user intervention, through the use of functions and procedures (see “Understanding PerfectScript functions and procedures” on page 48). Using functions and procedures in a macro lets the programmer compartmentalize code so it can be called from anywhere in the macro. Compartmentalization breaks logical pieces of code into smaller segments, and these segments can be separated
by use of the Label, Function, and Procedure commands (see “Understanding subroutines” on page 46). Smaller pieces of code are easier to work with, and they are also easier to debug.

An example of a procedural macro follows:

```perfectscript
HardReturn ()
HardReturn ()
//Call the function to get the name
sName = GetName()
Type (Text: sName)
HardReturn ()
//Call the function to get the address
sAddress = GetAddress()
Type (sAddress )
HardReturn ()
HardReturn ()
Type (Text: "Dear " + sName + ":")
HardReturn ()
HardReturn ()
Type (Text: "Yaddah Yaddah Yaddah")
HardReturn ()
HardReturn ()
HardReturn ()
Type (Text: "Sincerely,"
HardReturn ()
HardReturn ()
HardReturn ()
HardReturn ()
Type (Text: "Paul Russell")
HardReturn ()
Type (Text: "Manager, Eat-a-Burger, Anywhere, USA")
Function GetName()
GetString( sName; "Type in the name of the addressee"; 
"Enter Name"; 100 )
RETURN( sName )
EndFunction
Function GetAddress()
GetString( sAddress; "Type in the address of the addressee"; _ 
"Enter Address"; 100 )
```
RETURN( sAddress )
EndFunction

**Using expressions in PerfectScript macro statements**

Macros consist of statements. Some macro statements involve an action that must be captured as an expression. An expression is a formula that represents a value.

To create expressions, you use the following macro components:

- **variables** — store a single value at a time, but this value can change during macro play. For more information, see “Understanding PerfectScript variables” on page 10.
- **constants** — store a single value at a time, and this value cannot change during macro play. For more information, see “Understanding PerfectScript constants” on page 21.
- **operators** — are symbols (such as +, -, *, and %) that combine variables and constants to determine a value. For more information, see “Understanding PerfectScript operators” on page 21.

**Understanding expressions**

Expressions are created by combining variables or constants (or both) with operators — or by combining other expressions with operators.

The following examples contain expressions that involve variables and operators.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Example</th>
<th>Result</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>x := &quot;John Doe&quot;</td>
<td>The variable x equals the character string John Doe.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vLeftMargin := 5i</td>
<td>The variable vLeftMargin equals the measurement 5i.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ResultOfOperation := 3 + 4</td>
<td>The variable ResultOfOperation equals 7 (that is, the result of the numeric expression 3 + 4).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>z := z + 1</td>
<td>The variable z equals the value of z + 1. However, a variable can contain only one value at a time, so the original value of z is lost unless previously assigned to another variable.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>x := y &gt; 1</td>
<td>The variable x equals the result of the relational expression y &gt; 1 (that is, x equals True if y contains a value greater than 1, or it equals False if y contains a value less than or equal to 1).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>If (y&gt;1) Beep EndIf</td>
<td>The result of y&gt;1 is evaluated without assigning the result to a variable. The computer beeps if the value of y is greater than 1 (that is, if the result of the expression y&gt;1 equals True). The beep is skipped if the value of y is less than or equal to 1 (that is, if the result of the expression equals False).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The following example contains expressions that involve variables, constants, and operators. The value vCount is used as a variable, while the values 0, 4, and -1 are used as constants. The operators - and = are used to create expressions from these values: vCount - 1, vCount = 0, and vCount = 4.

Function BeepBeep(vCount)
Repeat
Beep
Wait(3)
vCount := vCount - 1
Until(vCount = 0)
Return
EndFunc
ForEach(vCount; {1; 2; 3; 4; 5})
If(vCount = 4)
Break
EndIf
BeepBeep(vCount)
Wait(5)
EndFor

MessageBox(x; "BREAK"; "Variable vCount equals 4"; IconInformation!)
Quit

For more information about the types of expressions that you can create, see "Understanding PerfectScript expression types" on page 32.

**Understanding PerfectScript variables**

A variable stores a single value at a time, but this value can change during macro play.

Variables must be “declared” before they can be used. Declaring a variable instructs PerfectScript to set aside memory for the variable.

Assigning a value to — or “initializing” — a variable involves pointing that variable to the memory cell where its desired value is stored. If desired, variables can be initialized with a value at the time of declaration. Although the value of a variable can belong to any data type, the most common data types for variables are numbers and character strings.

For more information about declaring and initializing variables, see “Declaring and initializing variables” on page 11.

Unlike other programming languages, PerfectScript does not force the programmer to specify the type of data to be stored in a variable.

When a variable is declared, it is assigned to one of four types:

- **local variables** — pertain only to the current macro. By default, variables are automatically declared local if no variable type is specified. For more information, see “Working with local variables” on page 12.
- **global variables** — pertain to the current macro and to macros that are called by the Run and Chain commands. For more information, see “Working with global variables” on page 14.
- **persistent variables** — pertain to any PerfectScript macro, for as long as PerfectScript is running. For more information, see “Working with persistent variables” on page 15.
constant variables — represent a value that cannot change during macro play. For more information, see “Working with constant variables” on page 16.

Two additional kinds of variables require special attention:

- A system variable is a type of macro command that contains current system information such as the current chart type or the default directory. For example, the PerfectScript system variable ErrorNumber contains the error value of a Cancel, Error, or Not Found condition (as illustrated in line 44 of the annotated macro sample ASSERT.WCM in the Macro Help [psh.chm]). Similarly, the WordPerfect system variable ?PathMacros assigns the path and name of the default folder for WordPerfect macros to a variable named vMacroPath, which is updated to reflect any changes to the directory. For more information about system variables, see “Understanding macro commands” on page 37.

- An implicit variable is a variable that is defined by PerfectScript. For example the MacroDialogResult variable contains the control value of the button that releases a dialog box (see “Releasing dialog boxes by using PerfectScript code” on page 102).

The type of a variable determines its visibility (or scope) and its duration in memory, so it’s important to understand when to use each variable type. If you try to access a variable from a line of code in which that variable is not visible, an “out-of-scope” error is generated.

In addition to variable type, the following factors determine the scope of a variable:

- where the variable is declared — for example, in the main body, in a function, in a procedure, in another macro, or in a separate program altogether
- which line of code is currently executing

You can check whether a variable exists. For more information, see “Determining whether variables exist” on page 16.

When a variable is no longer required, you can discard it. For more information, see “Discarding variables” on page 17.

If you want to assign a collection of data to a single variable name, you can use an array. The rules for using arrays are the same as for using variables. For more information, see “Working with arrays” on page 18.

**Declaring and initializing variables**

When you declare a macro, you specify a name for it.

For best results, it is highly recommended that you give your variables a descriptive name. Variable names have the following standards:

- They must begin with a letter.
- They can include any other combination of letters or numbers.
- They must be 50 characters or fewer in length.
- They are not case-sensitive.

Optionally, you can initialize a variable at its time of declaration by using an assignment operator (:= or =) to specify a value.

By following a few simple conventions for naming variables, you can make your macro code easier to understand. For instance, variables that have a string value should have a name that begins with a lowercase s, as in the following examples:

```
sFirstName := "Dave"
```
sAddress := "1625 East Nowhere St."
sBirthday := "6/12/69"

Similarly, variables that have a numeric value should have a name that begins with a lowercase n, as in the following examples:

nAge := 25
nTotal := 145.97

In the preceding examples, all declared variables are local, by default, because no variable type is specified.

**Working with local variables**

Local variables pertain only to the current macro. Local variables are the default variable type and, as such, should be used in most situations. You can use the PerfectScript programming commands Declare or Local to create local variables.

Variables that are declared in user-defined functions and user-defined procedures are local to those subroutines. For more information about subroutines, functions, and procedures, see “Understanding subroutines” on page 46.

Local variables can be declared in the following way:

```perfectscript
Declare ( sQReport )
```

or

```perfectscript
Local ( sQReport )
```

Local variables can be declared and initialized in the following way:

```perfectscript
sQReport := "Q4"
Declare ( sQReport := "Q4" )
```

or

```perfectscript
sQReport := "Q4"
Local ( sQReport := "Q4" )
```

If you want, you can use the Declare command or the Local command to declare and initialize more than one local variable at a time. Variables are separated by a semicolon (;), as in the following example:

```perfectscript
Declare (sFilename := "c:\test.wpd"; sTemp; nCount; cMainCount:=10)
```

When a local variable is declared, it is assigned to the local-variable table. Variables in the local-variable table are visible only until the end of the level of code in which they are declared. The level of code usually refers to the main body or a subroutine (that is, a function or procedure). Consider the following sample code:

```perfectscript
FileNew
/* Declare sName as a local variable and initialize to the string value "Dave" */
vName := "Dave"
/* Call the procedure */
TypeName ( )
Quit
```
Procedure TypeName ( )
/* This variable is out of scope. It has not been declared in the procedure TypeName */
Type ( vName )
HardReturn
EndProcedure

The preceding code assigns the string "Dave" to the variable. It then calls the procedure which tries to type the contents of the variable. Because the variable is out of scope within this procedure, the following error occurs when playing the macro:

Undefined variable 'VNAME' has been referenced. Check line 9 of macro file 'test.wcm.'

Consider the following sample code:

```plaintext
...  
/* Variables declared in the main body are visible in the main body */
vNameMain := "Dave"
NewScope ( )
/* When processing this Procedure vNameMain is not visible */
NewScope2 ( )
/* When processing this Function vNameMain is not visible */
...  
Quit  
// Subroutines . . .
Procedure NewScope ( )
/* Local variables declared in a procedure are visible only in that procedure */
NameNewScope := "Fred"
...  
EndProcedure  
Function NewScope2 ( )
/* Local variables declared in a function are visible only in that function */
vNameNewScope2 := "John"
...  
EndFunction  
```

In the preceding code, all three variables (vNameMain, NameNewScope, and vNameNewScope2) are named differently. However, these variables could have been named the same and still have been completely unique variables — each one holding different data — because they are each declared at a different level of the macro and therefore each have their own scope.
Working with global variables

Global variables pertain to the current macro and to macros that are called by the Run and Chain commands. Although a necessity in some cases, global variables should be used with care. You can use the PerfectScript programming command Global to create global variables.

Global variables can be declared in the following way:

```
Global ( nCount )
```

Global variables can be declared and initialized in the following way:

```
Global ( sFilename := "c:\Expense.wpd" )
```

If you create two variables with the same name (for example, Declare x and Global x), the following statement specifies that the global variable x is assigned the value 5:

```
Global x:=5
```

If you want, you can use the Global command to declare and initialize more than global variable at a time by separating variables with a semicolon (;).

When a variable is declared global, it is assigned to the global-variable table. Variables assigned to the global-variable table are in scope anytime after they are declared, and they exist until the end of the macro in which they are declared. If a global variable is declared on the very first line of a macro, it is accessible in the main body, in subroutines, and in other macros that are started with the commands Run or Chain. The following is an example of a global variable in use:

```
... /* The global variable is not yet declared and not yet accessible */
Global ( sGlobalName := "Fred" )
/* Any reference after this to the variable sGlobalName accesses the global variable */
...
/* Call the function */
DoSomething ( )
Type ( sGlobalName )
...
/* sGlobalName ceases to exist when the macro ends */
Quit
Procedure DoSomething ( )
/* Change the value of the global variable to "Dave" */
sGlobalName := "Dave"
...
EndProcedure
```

In the preceding example, the procedure is called after the global variable sGlobalName is declared and initialized. Inside this procedure, the contents of the variable are changed from "Fred" to "Dave". The commands DoSomething and Procedure DoSomething allow you to start another macro from within the current macro and, therefore, to access and change any variables that are declared global in the current macro.
Working with persistent variables

Persistent variables pertain to any PerfectScript macro, for as long as PerfectScript is running. Although a necessity in some cases, persistent variables should be used with care. You can use the PerfectScript programming command `Persist` to create persistent variables — in much the same way as you can use the `Global` command to create global variables.

Persistent variables can be declared in the following way:

```
PERSIST (VariableName)
```

Persistent variables can be declared and initialized in the following way:

```
PERSIST (VariableName := Value)
PERSISTALL (On!)
... /* All variables declared in the default manner are now persistent instead of local*/
VariableName := Value
...
PERSISTALL (Off!)
```

The preceding example uses the `PERSISTALL` command to change the default variable-declaration method from local to persistent and back again. All variables between `PERSISTALL (On!)` and `PERSISTALL (Off!)` are declared as persistent variables. This technique is useful when you want an entire block of variables to be persistent.

If you want, you can use the `Persist` command to declare and initialize more than persistent variable at a time by separating variables with a semicolon (`;`).

When a variable is declared persistent, it is assigned to the persistent-variable table. Variables in the persistent table remain in scope and exist until PerfectScript shuts down.

```
Persist (sAppName := "WordPerfect Suite 8")
MessageBox(retVal; sAppName; "Left margin equals: " + ?MarginLeft)
Run ("Macro2.wcm")
```

The following example illustrates scope by using local and persistent variables:

```
PERSIST (x := "This is persistent variable x")
```

PerfectScript does not shut down until all the applications that use PerfectScript (WordPerfect, Quattro Pro, and Presentations) have shut down.

Persistent variables are visible during merges and, as such, provide an effective method for passing values between macros and merges. If you need to use data during a merge, use persistent variables. For best results, give persistent variables a descriptive name, and denote their data type.

The following example of a persistent variable requires the use of two macros and includes a test that determines whether the variable has been initialized.

The first macro in this example is as follows:

```
PERSIST (sAppName := "WordPerfect Suite 8")
MessageBox(retVal; sAppName; "Left margin equals: " + ?MarginLeft)
Run ("Macro2.wcm")
```

The second macro in this example is as follows:

```
MessageBox(retVal; sAppName; "Right margin equals: " + ?MarginRight)
```

The following example illustrates scope by using local and persistent variables:

```
PERSIST (x := "This is persistent variable x")
```
CreateOutline()
// Original variable value remains unchanged.
MessageBox ( retVal ; "Information"; "The variable x = " + x )
Quit
Procedure CreateOutline ( )
/* PerfectScript will look first at the local variable table. If a variable exists in that table, that variable will be used before the persistent variable. By creating a local variable inside the function, we will force PerfectScript to find the local variable. This local variable x will be destroyed when execution returns from this subroutine. */
Local ( x := 0 )
ForNext ( x; 1; 10 )
// for loop creates a basic outline
vCharacter := NTOC(96) + x
Tab()
Type ( "(" + vCharacter + ")" )
Indent()
HardReturn()
EndFor
EndProcedure

**Working with constant variables**

Constant variables — also called “constants” — represent a value that cannot change during macro play. As such, constants must be initialized upon declaration, and their assigned value cannot change. Constants should be used sparingly, if at all.

Expressions are formed by using operators (see “Understanding PerfectScript operators” on page 21) to combine constants with other types of variables. For more information about constants, see “Understanding PerfectScript constants” on page 21.

**Determining whether variables exist**

You can use the `Exists` command to determine whether a variable exists — that is, whether it has been declared and initialized. The following sample code shows how to use the `Exists` command:

```perfectscript
// Declare and initialize a variable’s Name := "Fred"
// Use Exists to see if the variable still exists as a local variable
If ( Exists ( sName; Local! ) )
...
EndIf
...
Quit
```

The `Exists` command returns a value after checking the specified variable against the variable tables. The variable tables are checked in the following order: local, then global, then persistent.
If you specify a variable-table parameter for the `Exists` command, a value of `True` is returned if that variable is found in the specified variable table. If the variable is not found in the specified variable table, a value of `False` is returned. The following example illustrates this scenario:

```plaintext
If( Exists ( x ; Global!) = TRUE )
  x := 147
Else
  Global ( x := 147 )
EndIf
```

If you do not specify a variable-table parameter for the `Exists` command, one of the following values is returned:

- `NotFound!` or `0` — indicates that the variable does not exist in any variable table
- `Local!` or `1` — indicates that the variable exists in the local-variable table
- `Global!` or `2` — indicates that the variable exists in the global-variable table
- `Persistent!` or `3` — indicates that the variable exists in the persistent-variable table

The following example illustrates this scenario:

```plaintext
Persist( x := 3 )
If ( Exists( x ) = Exists.Persistent!)
  MessageBox ( retVar; "Variable"; "This variable Exists in the _ Persist variable pool (" + Exists ( x ) + ")" )
EndIf
```

**Discarding variables**

You can use the `Discard` command to remove a variable from memory by deleting it from its associated variable table. The following sample code shows how to use the `Discard` command:

```plaintext
// Declare and initialize a variable
sName := "Fred"
...
// Free the memory used by vName
Discard ( sName )
// sName no longer exists and cannot be accessed
...
Quit
```

The `Discard` command searches the variable tables in the following order: local, then global, then persistent. If variables with the same name exist in different variable tables, you may need to use the `Discard` command multiple times, as in the following sample code:

```plaintext
While(Exists(VariableName))
  Discard(VariableName)
EndWhile
```
Working with arrays

If you want, you can assign a collection of data to a single variable name by creating an “array.” The elements in a PerfectScript array can be declared and initialized in the same ways as variables. Unlike other programming languages, however, PerfectScript lets you assign the elements in an array to different data types. PerfectScript arrays therefore provide a powerful way to control large amounts of data on one or more dimensions.

To use an array, you must first declare it and initialize its elements. When a macro is played, a run-time error is incurred for each array element that is not both declared and initialized.

The commands for declaring arrays are the same as for declaring variables: Declare, Local, Global and Persist. At declaration, an array requires the following items:

• an alphanumeric (case-insensitive) name that begins with a letter and is limited to 50 characters
• a subscript, marked in brackets ([ ]), that specifies how many array elements to create

The following commands declare a one-dimensional array that contains five elements:

• Declare(aMyArray[5]) — declares a one-dimensional, five-element local array
• Local(aMyArray[5]) — declares a one-dimensional, five-element local array
• Global(aGlobalArray[5]) — declares a one-dimensional, five-element global array
• Persist(aPersistArray[5]) — declares a one-dimensional, five-element persistent array

Every array contains a hidden element called 0. This element stores the total number of elements in the array (not including itself), and an attempt to assign any other value to this element generates an error message. In the previous examples, the declared array actually includes six elements if you include element 0.

The preceding examples declare an array but do not initialize its elements. Before you can use an array, you must individually initialize each array element. To initialize an array element, you must specify the array name; the subscript (or index) number of the array element, enclosed in brackets ([ ]); and the desired value for the array element. The following example illustrates how to initialize each element in an array after declaring the array.

```
// Declare a 5-element array
Declare ( aMyArray[5] )

// Initialize each of the five elements
aMyArray[1] := "One"
aMyArray[2] := "Two"
aMyArray[3] := "Three"
aMyArray[4] := "Four"
aMyArray[5] := "Five"
```

You can simplify the process of initializing array elements after declaring an array by using the following syntax:

```
Declare ( aMyArray[5]; nCount := 0 )
ForEach (x; {"One"; "Two"; "Three"; "Four"; "Five"})
nCount := nCount +1
aMyArray[ nCount ] := x
EndFor
```
If you want, you can initialize an array upon its declaration (in which case, the number of elements need not be specified). The following commands declare and initialize a one-dimensional array that contains five elements:

- Declare(aMyArray[ ] := {"One"; "Two"; "Three"; "Four"; "Five"}) — declares and initializes a one-dimensional, five-element local array
- Local(aMyArray[ ] := {"One"; "Two"; "Three"; "Four"; "Five"}) — declares and initializes a one-dimensional, five-element local array
- aMyArray[ ] := {"One"; "Two"; "Three"; "Four"; "Five"} — declares and initializes a one-dimensional, five-element local array
- Global(aGlobalArray[ ] := {"One"; "Two"; "Three"; "Four"; "Five"}) — declares and initializes a one-dimensional, five-element global array
- Persist(aPersistArray[ ] := {"One"; "Two"; "Three"; "Four"; "Five"}) — declares and initializes a one-dimensional, five-element persistent array

PerfectScript arrays can have up to ten dimensions. A two-dimensional array is like a table with rows and columns: Each cell in the table is an individual element.

For declaring a multi-dimensional array, the syntax of the subscript operator ([ ] ) is as follows: The number of dimensions is followed by a semicolon (;), which is followed by the number elements within each dimension. The following example shows how to declare a three-dimensional array in which each dimension has five elements:

```
Declare ( aMyArray[3;5] )
```

Each dimension can have up to 32,767 elements (depending on available memory), and each element can be individually accessed and initialized. For accessing and initializing an element in a multi-dimensional array, the syntax of the subscript operator ([ ] ) is as follows: The dimension number of the element is followed by a semicolon (;), which is followed by the subscript (or index) number of the element within that dimension.

The following syntax specifies the first element in the first dimension:

```
aMyArray[1;1] := "1-1"
```

The following syntax specifies the third element in the second dimension:

```
aMyArray[2;3] := "2-3"
```

The following syntax specifies the fifth element in the third dimension:

```
aMyArray[3;5] := "3-5"
```

Multi-dimensional arrays, like one-dimensional arrays, can be initialized at their time of declaration. In this scenario, the number of elements in each dimension does not need to be explicitly stated because it is implied by the actual initialization of those elements. In addition, the dimensions are separated by a semicolon (;). The following example illustrates this syntax:

```
aMyArray[ ] :=
{["1-1"; "1-2"; "1-3"; "1-4"; "1-5"]}; // First row
{["2-1"; "2-2"; "2-3"; "2-4"; "2-5"]}; // Second row
{["3-1"; "3-2"; "3-3"; "3-4"; "3-5"] } // Third row
```

PerfectScript provides a special form of initialization for multi-dimensional arrays. This form, called a slice ( . . . ), lets you initialize the elements on a single dimension by repeating the last-initialized element throughout that dimension. When initializing with a slice, you must fully initialize at least one row in each dimension to define the extent of the slice. The following example illustrates the syntax for using a slice:
// Declares a three-dimensional array (3x3x6) initializing all elements with a slice
aMyArray[] :=
( ( [1;1;1;1;1]; // First dimension, first row
  [1; ... ]; // First dimension, second row, replicated with value 1
  [1; ... ] ); // First dimension, third row
((2;2;2;2;2); // Second dimension, first row
  (2; ... ); // Second dimension, second row
  (2; ... ) ); // Second dimension, third row
((3;3;3;3;3); // Third dimension, first row
  (3; 4, ... ); // Third dimension, second row, replicated with value 4
  (3; 1; ... ) ) ) // Third dimension, third row, replicated with _ value 1

You can use the Dimensions command to return the following information about an array:
• total number of dimensions in the array
• total number of elements in the array
• number of elements in each dimension
• index range

In some cases, you must declare an array dynamically and therefore cannot be sure how many dimensions are contained in the array. The Dimensions command allows a macro to act dynamically by querying the size of an array:

aFiles[] := GetFileList() // returns an array of random size
ForNext (x; 1; Dimensions( aFiles[]; 0 ) )
  // Dimensions queries the array for the size
  FileOpen ( aFiles[x] )
  FooterA(Create!)
  Type ( "McRae's Eat-a-Burger ")
  SubStructureExit()
  FileSave ( aFiles[x]; WordPerfect_60! )
  Close()
EndFor
Function GetFileList()
  ... // statement block that creates an array (sized) dynamically
Return ( ArrayOfFiles[] )
EndFunction

Please note that MacroArgs[] is a special PerfectScript array that contains values that are passed to the macro by the commands Chain, Nest, or Run. The following example illustrates the MacroArgs[] array.

// Macro: MAIN.WCM
// Include full path if macro not
// in default macros directory
Understanding PerfectScript constants

A constant — also called a constant variable — represents a value that cannot change during macro play.

By contrast, most variables represent a value that can change during macro play. For more information, see “Understanding PerfectScript variables” on page 10.

Constants must be initialized upon declaration, and their assigned value cannot change. You can declare and initialize a constant in the following way:

```
Constant ( WPCLASSNAME := "WordPerfect.8.32" )
```

A compile-time error occurs if a constant is misused in one of the following ways:

- if the constant is not initialized upon declaration — for example, if the declaration statement is missing an assignment operator (:=) or an assigned value (or both)
- if an attempt is made to assign a different value to a constant after it has been declared and initialized

You can set constants apart from other variables by giving them a name that appears entirely in capital letters. This naming convention is the generally accepted practice in C/C++ and other programming languages.

Understanding PerfectScript operators

Operators are used to combine variables (see “Understanding PerfectScript variables” on page 10) and constants (see “Understanding PerfectScript constants” on page 21) into expressions — and even to combine expressions into other expressions. In PerfectScript, operators can be either “unary” or “binary.”

Unary operators are symbols or words that represent an operation on only one operand or expression. The following table lists the unary operators that are available in PerfectScript.
Binary operators are symbols or words that represent an operation on two operands or expressions. In the following example, the binary plus operator (+) adds the operands 3 and 4, and the assignment operator (:=) assigns the result of the arithmetic expression 3 + 4 to variable x.

\[ x := 3 + 4 \]

All PerfectScript operators can be classified into the following functional categories:

- **assignment operators** — symbols that assign the value of a right-operand expression to a left-operand variable. For more information, see “Understanding assignment operators” on page 22.
- **arithmetic operators** — symbols or words that represent a mathematical operation on two operands. For more information, see “Understanding arithmetic operators” on page 23.
- **relational operators** — symbols that represent a relational operation on two operands, such that the operation result equals either true or false. For more information, see “Understanding relational operators” on page 24.
- **logical operators** — words that represent a logical relationship between conditions, or that invert a condition. For more information, see “Understanding logical operators” on page 26.
- **bitwise operators** — symbols that represent a bitwise operation on two integer operands. For more information, see “Understanding bitwise operators” on page 28.

When used together to form an expression, operators are evaluated by PerfectScript based on precedence level. For more information about operator precedence, see “Understanding operator precedence” on page 30.

For detailed information on each operator, please see the “Operators” topic in the PerfectScript Command Reference section of the Macro Help (psh.chm).

### Understanding assignment operators

Assignment operators are symbols that assign the value of a right-operand expression to a left-operand variable.

The following table lists the assignment operators that are available in PerfectScript.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Operator</th>
<th>Action</th>
<th>Example and result</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| := or =  | Assignment of a value to a variable | \[ x := "John Doe" \]  
  **Result:** The variable x equals the character string John Doe. |
**Understanding arithmetic operators**

Arithmetic operators are symbols or words that represent a mathematical operation on two operands.

All arithmetic operators are binary operators.

The following table lists the arithmetic operators that are available in PerfectScript.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Operator</th>
<th>Action</th>
<th>Example and result</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>*</td>
<td>Multiplication</td>
<td>vStr := &quot;abcdefg&quot; - &quot;efg&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/</td>
<td>Division</td>
<td><strong>Result:</strong> vStr equals &quot;abcd&quot; (by reduction of strings)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-</td>
<td>Subtraction of numbers and reduction of strings</td>
<td>vStr := &quot;abcdfg&quot; - &quot;efg&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>+</td>
<td>Addition of numbers and concatenation of strings</td>
<td>vStr := &quot;abcd&quot; + &quot;efg&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>%</td>
<td>Floating point modulus division — returns remainder of floating-point division</td>
<td>x := 10.1 % 3 <strong>Result:</strong> x equals 1.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MOD</td>
<td>Integer modulus division — returns remainder of integer division</td>
<td>x := 10 MOD 3 <strong>Result:</strong> x equals 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DIV</td>
<td>Integer division — returns integer portion of integer division</td>
<td>x := 10 DIV 3 <strong>Result:</strong> x equals 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>**</td>
<td>Exponentiation — raises a number to a power</td>
<td>vResult = 2**3 <strong>Result:</strong> vResult = 8 (that is, 2 to the power of 3)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**Understanding relational operators**

Relational operators are symbols that represent a relational operation on two operands. The operation result equals **True** or **False**.

- All relational operators are binary operators.

The following table lists the relational operators that are available in PerfectScript.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Operator</th>
<th>Action</th>
<th>Example and result</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| >        | Greater than            | \(x := 10\)  
|          |                         | \(z := (x>5)\)  
|          |                         | **Result:** \(z\) equals **True** (because \(x\) is greater than 5)               |
| >=       | Greater than or equal to| \(x := 10\)  
|          |                         | If \((x>=10)\)  
|          |                         | Beep \  
|          |                         | Else \  
|          |                         | Quit \  
|          |                         | EndIf \  
|          | **Result:** The computer beeps because the result of expression \(x >= 10\) equals **True** (that is, \(x\) equals 10). The **Else** statement is skipped, so the **Quit** command does not end the macro. |
| <        | Less than               | \(x := 10\)  
|          |                         | \(z := (x<5)\)  
|          | **Result:** \(z\) equals **False** (because \(x\) is not less than 5)           |
| <=       | Less than or equal to   | \(x := 20\)  
|          |                         | If \((x<=10)\)  
|          |                         | Beep \  
|          |                         | Else \  
|          |                         | Quit \  
|          |                         | EndIf \  
<p>|          | <strong>Result:</strong> The computer does not beep because the result of expression (x &lt;= 10) equals <strong>False</strong> (that is, (x) is greater than 10). The <strong>Else</strong> statement is played, so the <strong>Quit</strong> command ends the macro. |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Operator</th>
<th>Action</th>
<th>Example and result</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| =        | Equal to | x := 10
           | Note: Whereas LIKE is True regardless of whether the compared strings are identical in case, = is case-sensitive. | z := (x=5)
          | Result: z equals False (because x is not equal to 5) |
|          |         | x := 10
           |                        | z := (x = 10)
          | Result: z equals True (because x is equal to 10) |
|          |         | x := "Abc"
           |                        | z := (x = "Abc")
          | Result: z equals True (because x is equal to "Abc") |
|          |         | x := "Abc"
           |                        | z := (x = "abc")
          | Result: z equals False (because x must be the same as "Abc", including case) |
| <>       | Not equal to | x := 10
           |                          | z := (x!=5)
          | Result: z equals True (because x is not equal to 5) |
| !=       | Not equal to | x := 12
           |                          | z := (x !=12)
          | Result: z equals False (because x is equal to 12) |
### Understanding logical operators

Logical operators are words that either invert one condition or represent a logical relationship between conditions. A condition is the result of a relational expression (see “Understanding relational expressions” on page 36).

Most logical operators are binary operators. The exception is **NOT**.

The following table lists the logical operators that are available in PerfectScript.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Operator</th>
<th>Action</th>
<th>Example and result</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| **IN**   | Membership | \( z := 3 \text{ IN } \{1; 2; 3\} \) <br> **Result:** \( z \) equals **True**  
\( z := 3 \text{ IN } \{1; 2; 4\} \) <br> **Result:** \( z \) equals **False**  
\( z := \{1; 2; 3\} \text{ IN } \{1; 2; 3\} \) <br> **Result:** \( z \) equals **True**  
\( z := \{1; 2\} \text{ IN } \{1; 2; 3\} \) <br> **Result:** \( z \) equals **True**  
\( z := \{1; 2; 3\} \text{ IN } \{1; 2; 4\} \) <br> **Result:** \( z \) equals **False** |
| **LIKE** | Case-insensitive string equality | \( z := ("abc" \text{ LIKE } "Abc") \) <br> **Result:** \( z \) equals **True**  |

**Note:** Whereas = is **True** only if the compared strings are identical in case, LIKE disregards case altogether.

---

**Understanding logical operators**

*See also the detailed **NOT** examples that follow this table.*

\( x := 8 \text{ } 

---

-26 Using expressions in PerfectScript macro statements
Here are some more detailed examples of NOT.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NOT Example</th>
<th>Result</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>x := 5</td>
<td>If x is less than 10, True is assigned to y and False (that is, the inverted result of the expression x&lt;10) to z.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>y := (x&lt;10)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>z := NOT(x&lt;10)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Using expressions in PerfectScript macro statements

Here is a more detailed example of XOR.

**XOR Example**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>x := 1</th>
<th>y := 2</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>If (x = 0) XOR (y = 2)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Beep</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Result**

In this shorthand notation, the result of the logical XOR expression equals True because the relational expression x = 0 is False and the relational expression y = 2 is True.

**Understanding bitwise operators**

Bitwise operators are symbols that represent a bitwise operation on two-integer operands.

Most bitwise operators are binary operators. The exception is bitwise NOT (~).

The following table lists the bitwise operators that are available in PerfectScript.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Operator</th>
<th>Action</th>
<th>Example and result</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| ~ | Toggles a binary value (that is, converts 1 to 0, and 0 to 1). Also called “bitwise unary NOT” — “unary” because it has a single complement. | ~-15  
Note: The binary equivalent of -15 is 1111111111110001.  
Result: 14 (binary 00000000001110) |
| & | Results in 1 if both operand bits are 1, 0 if one of the operand bits is not 1, or 0 if both operands are 0. Also called “bitwise AND.” | x:=1000&31  
Note: The binary equivalent of 1000 is 1111101000 and of 31 is 0000011111.  
Result: x equals 8 (binary 0000001000) |
| | | x:=65535&535  
Note: The binary equivalent of 65535 is 1111111111111111 and of 535 is 0000001000101111.  
Result: x equals 535 (binary 0000000000101111) |
| | | x:=1000|27  
Note: The binary equivalent of 1000 is 1111101000 and of 27 is 0000011011.  
Result: x equals 1019 (binary 1111111011) |
| | | x:=65535|535  
Note: The binary equivalent of 65535 is 1111111111111111 and of 535 is 0000001000010111.  
Result: x equals 65535 (binary 1111111111111111) |
| ^ | Results in 0 if operands match, 1 otherwise. Also called “bitwise exclusive OR (XOR)” | x:=1000^40  
Note: The binary equivalent of 1000 is 1111101000 and of 40 is 0000010100.  
Result: x equals 960 (binary 1111000000) |
| | | x:=65535^535  
Note: The binary equivalent of 65535 is 1111111111111111 and of 535 is 0000001000010111.  
Result: x equals 65000 (binary 1111111111111000) |
30 Using expressions in PerfectScript macro statements

Understanding operator precedence

The following table explains operator precedence, which is used by PerfectScript to evaluate expressions.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Operator</th>
<th>Action</th>
<th>Example and result</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>&lt;&lt;</td>
<td>Shifts bits left by the specified number of places. For example, specifying 1 place shifts all bits one place to the left (and inserts a 0 at the right end of the binary number, effectively multiplying the value by 2.</td>
<td>x:=500&lt;&lt;1&lt;br&gt;Note: The binary equivalent of 500 is 0111110100.&lt;br&gt;Result: x equals 1000 (binary 1111101000)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>x:=65535&lt;&lt;1&lt;br&gt;Note: The binary equivalent of 65535 is 1111111111111111.&lt;br&gt;Result: x equals 131070 (binary 1111111111111110)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&gt;&gt;</td>
<td>Shifts bits right by the specified number of places. For example, specifying 1 place shifts all bits one place to the right (and inserts a 0 at the left end of the binary number, effectively dividing the value by 2.</td>
<td>x:=1000&gt;&gt;1&lt;br&gt;Note: The binary equivalent of 1000 is 111101000.&lt;br&gt;Result: x equals 500 (binary 0111110100)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>x:=65535&gt;&gt;1&lt;br&gt;Note: The binary equivalent of 65535 is 1111111111111111.&lt;br&gt;Result: x equals 32767 (binary 0111111111111111)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;&lt;&lt;</td>
<td>Rotates bits left by the specified number of places. For example, specifying 1 rotates all bits one place to the left.</td>
<td>x:=-2147450881&lt;&lt;1&lt;br&gt;Note: The binary equivalent of -2147450881 is 100000000000000001111111111111111.&lt;br&gt;Result: x equals 65535 (binary 00000000000000001111111111111111)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&gt;&gt;&gt;</td>
<td>Rotates bits right by the specified number of places. For example, specifying 1 rotates all bits one place to the right.</td>
<td>x:=65535&gt;&gt;&gt;1&lt;br&gt;Note: The binary equivalent of 65535 is 00000000000000001111111111111111.&lt;br&gt;Result: x equals -2147450881 (binary 100000000000000001111111111111111)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The following rules apply to operator precedence:

- Operators with the same precedence are evaluated from left to right.
- Operators inside parentheses are evaluated before operators outside parentheses.
- Operators inside nested parentheses are evaluated from the innermost parentheses out.

Here are some examples that illustrate operator precedence.
Using expressions in PerfectScript macro statements

Understanding PerfectScript expression types

By combining variables (see “Understanding PerfectScript variables” on page 10) and constants (see “Understanding PerfectScript constants” on page 21) with operators (see “Understanding PerfectScript operators” on page 21), you can form expressions for use in macro statements.

PerfectScript macros support the following expression types:

- **numeric expressions** — numeric variables or numeric constants, or a combination of the two as joined by a numeric operator. For more information, see “Understanding numeric expressions” on page 33.
- **measurement expressions** — variables or constants that contain a measurement value, or a combination of the two as joined by a numeric operator. For more information, see “Understanding measurement expressions” on page 33.
- **radix expressions** — values that combine a number with a character that identifies the “radix” for that number (that is, the base of its number system). For more information, see “Understanding radix expressions” on page 34.
- **character expressions** — variables or character constants (such as letters, digits, or keyboard symbols), or a combination of the two as joined by the plus operator (+), the minus operator (-), or a relational operator. For more information, see “Understanding character expressions” on page 34.
- **arithmetic expressions** — statements that represent arithmetic operations, or statements that contain two operands that are joined by an arithmetic operator. For more information, see “Understanding arithmetic expressions” on page 35.
- **relational expressions** — statements that represent a relational operation, or statements that contain two operands that are joined by a relational operator. For more information, see “Understanding relational expressions” on page 36.
- **logical expressions** — statements that represent logical operations, or statements that contain two relational expressions that are joined by a logical operator. For more information, see “Understanding logical expressions” on page 36.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Example</th>
<th>Result</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>x := ((50 * 5 + 50) * 3 + 100)</td>
<td>x equals 1000:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• 50 * 5 = 250</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• 250 + 50 = 300</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• 300 * 3 = 900</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• 900 + 100 = 1000</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>x := ((50 * (5 + 50)) * 3 + 100)</td>
<td>x equals 8350:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• 5 + 50 = 55</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• 55 * 50 = 2750</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• 2750 * 3 = 8250</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• 8250 + 100 = 8350</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>x := ((50 * 5 + 50) * (3 + 100))</td>
<td>x equals 30900:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• 50 * 5 = 250</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• 250 + 50 = 300</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• 3 + 100 = 103</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• 300 * 103 = 30900</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
• *bitwise expressions* — statements that represent bitwise operations, or statements that contain two operands that are joined by a bitwise operator. For more information, see “Understanding bitwise expressions” on page 37.

Command calls and function calls can be used in an expression if they return a value. For more information, see “Using calling statements in PerfectScript macros” on page 46.

**Understanding numeric expressions**

Numeric expressions are numeric variables or numeric constants — or a combination of the two as joined by a numeric operator.

Given that \( x \) equals 3, the following examples are valid numeric expressions.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Example</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>( x )</td>
<td>Variable that contains a numeric value</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Numeric constant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( x \times 5 )</td>
<td>Expression that multiplies ( x ) by 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(+5)</td>
<td>Unary plus constant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(- (x + 10))</td>
<td>Unary minus expression, which negates the result of ( x ) plus 10</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Understanding measurement expressions**

Measurement expressions are variables or constants that contain a measurement value — or a combination of the two as joined by a numeric operator. A measurement value is created by combining a number (which represents the desired number of units) with a character (which identifies the desired unit of measurement).

The available units of measurement, and their associated identifiers, are as follows.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Unit of measurement</th>
<th>Identifier</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Inches</td>
<td>&quot; or i</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Centimeters</td>
<td>c</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Millimeters</td>
<td>m</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Points (72 per inch)</td>
<td>p</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WP units (1200 per inch)</td>
<td>w</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

You can add and subtract measurement expressions as you do numeric expressions (see “Understanding numeric expressions” on page 33). When an operation is performed on measurement expressions that have different units of measure, the right operand is converted to the type of the left-measurement operand.

Combining numeric expressions with measurement expressions can produce unexpected results.

You do not need to specify a unit of measure for command-measurement expressions that follow `DefaultUnits`.
If you do not specify a unit of measure for a measurement expression, and DefaultUnits has not been encountered, the default unit of measurement WP units (1200 per inch) is used.

Given that \( z \) equals \( 4i \) (that is, 4 inches), the following examples are valid measurement expressions.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Example</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>5c</td>
<td>Constant (5 centimeters)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( z )</td>
<td>Variable that contains a measurement value of 4 inches</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( z * 10i )</td>
<td>Expression that multiplies ( z ) by 10i (that is, 10 inches)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( -z )</td>
<td>Unary minus, which yields (-4i) (that is, negative 4 inches)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Understanding radix expressions**

The *radix* is the base of a number system. Radix expressions contain a radix value, which is created by combining a number (which represents the number value) with a character (which identifies the radix).

A radix value must begin with a number. For this reason, you must place a zero before any hexadecimal numbers that begin with the letters \( A \) through \( F \).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Radix</th>
<th>Identifier</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>16 (hexadecimal system)</td>
<td>( x ) or ( h )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8 (octal system)</td>
<td>( o )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 (binary system)</td>
<td>( b )</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The following examples are valid radix expressions.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Example</th>
<th>Result</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>( x := 1Ah )</td>
<td>( x ) equals the hexadecimal value of 26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( x := 0Ah )</td>
<td>( x ) equals the hexadecimal value of 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( x := 1111b )</td>
<td>( x ) equals the binary value of 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( x := 44o )</td>
<td>( x ) equals the octal value of 36</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Understanding character expressions**

Character expressions are character variables or character constants (such as letters, digits, or keyboard symbols) — or a combination of the two as concatenated by the plus operator (+), separated by the minus operator (–), or compared by a relational operator (such as >). A character constant that is enclosed in single quotation marks specifies an ASCII numeric value, as in the following examples.
A character string must be enclosed in double quotation marks. If the string already contains double quotation marks, it must use a second set of double quotation marks, as in the following examples.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Example</th>
<th>Result</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>x := 'A'</td>
<td>x equals 65</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>x := 'A' + 'B'</td>
<td>x equals 131 (that is, 65 + 66)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The following examples are valid character expressions.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Example</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>&quot;John Doe&quot;</td>
<td>Character string</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>z := &quot;Joe &quot; + &quot;Doe&quot;</td>
<td>Expression that is assigned to variable z (such that z equals Joe Doe)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>x := z + &quot;, Jr.&quot;</td>
<td>Expression that is assigned to variable x (such that x equals Joe Doe, Jr.)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

If you concatenate a character string and a number, the number is converted to a character string. If you concatenate a numeric character and a number, the numeric character is converted to a number and the two are added. For examples, see the table that follows.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Example</th>
<th>Result</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>x := &quot;A&quot; + 1</td>
<td>x equals A1 (which is a character string)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>x := &quot;1&quot; + 1</td>
<td>x equals 2 (which is a number)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>x := (&quot;A&quot; + (1 + 3))</td>
<td>x equals A4 (which is the result of a mathematical operation [1+3=4] being converted to a character string before being concatenated to A)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>x := (&quot;A&quot; + 1 + 3)</td>
<td>x equals A13 (which is a character string because the numbers converted and not added, due to operator precedence)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>x := (1 + 3 + &quot;A&quot;)</td>
<td>x equals 4A (which is a character string because the numbers are added and then converted to a character string, due to operator precedence)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Understanding arithmetic expressions**

Arithmetic expressions are statements that represent arithmetic operations, or statements that contain two operands that are joined by an arithmetic operator. The result of an arithmetic operation is a numeric value.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Example</th>
<th>Result</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>x := 1 + 2</td>
<td>x equals 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>x := 3 * 3</td>
<td>x equals 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>x := &quot;2&quot; * 3 * 4</td>
<td>x equals 24 (because 2 is converted to a number then multiplied)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Understanding relational expressions

Relational expressions are statements that represent a relational operation, or statements that contain two operands that are joined by a relational operator. The result of a relational operation is either True or False.

Given that \( x \) equals 5, the following examples yield the described results.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Example</th>
<th>Result</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>( x := &quot;A&quot; * 2 )</td>
<td>Error (because letters and numbers cannot be multiplied by each other)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Example</th>
<th>Result</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>( z := (x = 6) )</td>
<td>( z ) equals False (because 5 is less than 6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( z := (x = 5) )</td>
<td>( z ) equals True (because 5 equals 5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( z := (&quot;Ab&quot; &gt; &quot;Bb&quot;) )</td>
<td>( z ) equals False (because Ab is less than, or comes before, Bb)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( z := (&quot;Ab&quot; != &quot;Bb&quot;) )</td>
<td>( z ) equals True (because Ab is not equal to Bb)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Given that \( x \) equals "A", \( y \) equals "B", and \( z \) equals "a", the following expressions return True or False in variable \( w \).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Example</th>
<th>Result</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>( w := (x &lt; y) )</td>
<td>( w ) equals False (because uppercase A is less than, or comes before, uppercase B)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( w := (x &gt; z) )</td>
<td>( w ) equals True (uppercase A is greater than, or comes after, lowercase a).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Understanding logical expressions

Logical expressions are statements that represent logical operations, or statements that contain two relational expressions that are joined by a logical operator. The result of a logical operation equals True or False.

Given that \( x \) equals 10, \( y \) equals 5, and \( z \) equals 20, the following expressions return True or False in variable \( w \).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Example</th>
<th>Result</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>( w := ((x &lt;= y) AND (y &lt;= z)) )</td>
<td>( w ) equals True (because both relational expressions are true)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( w := ((x = y) AND (y &lt;= z)) )</td>
<td>( w ) equals False (because the first relational expression is false)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( w := NOT(y &gt; z) )</td>
<td>( w ) equals True (because 5 is not greater than 20)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( w := ((x != 5) AND (y != 20)) )</td>
<td>( w ) equals True (because all relational expressions are true) AND ( (z = 20) )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( w := (((x = 5) AND (y = 20)) )</td>
<td>( w ) equals True (because the expression ( z = 20 ) is true) OR ( (z = 20) )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( w := (((x = 5) AND (y = 20)) )</td>
<td>( w ) equals False (because all relational expressions are false) OR ( NOT (z = 20) )</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Understanding bitwise expressions

Bitwise expressions are statements that represent bitwise operations, or statements that contain two operands that are joined by a bitwise operator. The result of a bitwise operation is a numeric value.

Consider the following examples of bitwise expressions.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Bitwise operator</th>
<th>Example and result</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Bitwise NOT (~)</td>
<td>( x := \neg (-15) )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Result: ( x ) equals 14 (complement of 1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>( x := \neg (-15) + 1 )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Result: ( x ) equals 15 (complement of 2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bitwise AND (&amp;</td>
<td>( x := 65535 &amp; 535 )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Result: ( x ) equals 535</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bitwise inclusive OR (</td>
<td>( x := 65535 | 535 )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Result: ( x ) equals 65535</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bitwise XOR (^)</td>
<td>( x := 65535 ^ 535 )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Result: ( x ) equals 65000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bitwise shift left (&lt;&lt;)</td>
<td>( x := 65535 &lt;&lt; 1 )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Result: ( x ) equals 131070</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bitwise shift right (&gt;&gt;)</td>
<td>( x := 65535 &gt;&gt; 1 )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Result: ( x ) equals 32767</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bitwise rotate left (&lt;&lt;&lt;)</td>
<td>( x := -2147450881 &lt;&lt;&lt; 1 )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Result: ( x ) equals 65535</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bitwise rotate right (&gt;&gt;&gt;)</td>
<td>( x := 65535 &gt;&gt;&gt; 1 )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Result: ( x ) equals -2147450881</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Using command statements in PerfectScript macros

A command statement consists of a macro command, which represents a single instruction (typically, an action) in a macro.

Understanding macro commands

PerfectScript provides access to two main types of macro commands: product commands and programming commands.

\textit{OLE object commands} represent a third type of PerfectScript macro commands. Also called “a method,” an OLE object command performs a task on an OLE object in a specific OLE Automation server. For more information, see “Understanding OLE Automation” on page 60.
Product commands perform functions that let you use WordPerfect Office features in your macros. Product commands can be specific to one WordPerfect Office application or common to all of them. Many product commands require you to specify parameters that determine settings for dialog boxes or other application features (such as the ruler).

Product commands that report information (that is, return a value) about the state of an application or feature are sometimes called system variables. In WordPerfect, system variables begin with a leading question mark (as in ?ColumnWidth). In Presentations, system variables begin with a leading Env (as in EnvPaths).

Programming commands perform functions that let you direct the function of a macro by controlling how application features act and interact. For example, you can use programming commands to specify macro conditions (see “Using conditional statements in PerfectScript macros” on page 42), specify that part of a macro run several times (see “Using loop statements in PerfectScript macros” on page 45), invoke or jump to a specified subroutine (see “Using calling statements in PerfectScript macros” on page 46), and so on.

You can use a product command by itself to create a basic macro that performs a simple task within a WordPerfect Office application. For example, the following product command displays the fourth slide in the current slideshow in Presentations:

```perfectscript
ShowSlide(Slide: 4)
```

However, you must use product commands and programming commands together if you want to create a more complex macro. For example, the following code uses the product commands LineHeightDlg and LineSpacingDlg with the programming commands If, Else, and Endif to determine which dialog box to display in WordPerfect. (The Line Height dialog box is displayed if x equals the value "A", while the Line Spacing dialog box is displayed if x has any other value.)

```perfectscript
If (x = "A")
  LineHeightDlg
Else
  LineSpacingDlg
Endif
```

Understanding macro-command components

All macro commands have a name, and most macro commands have one or more parameters (which are marked by separators). For a PerfectScript macro to work properly, its macro commands must be spelled correctly and must include all required parameters (and the necessary separators) in the correct order.

When you create a macro by recording it (see “Recording PerfectScript macros” on page 70), the correct syntax is automatically applied to all macro commands. However, when you create a macro by typing code (see “Writing and editing PerfectScript macros” on page 71), you must manually apply the correct syntax to all macro commands.

In addition, some macro commands can be used to return data from various sources. Such commands are said to have return values.

As previously mentioned, product commands that return a value about the state of an application or feature are sometimes called system variables.

For more information about the components of a macro command, see the following topics:

- “Understanding PerfectScript command names” on page 39
Understanding PerfectScript command names

The name of a macro command (that is, the “command name”) indicates which feature is activated by that command.

Sometimes, a name is all that is necessary to perform the complete action of a macro command. For example, FileOpenDlg is a complete macro command because the name itself contains enough information to complete the task of displaying the Open File dialog box in WordPerfect.

Understanding command-name syntax

Command names are not case-sensitive. Although many commands appear in mixed case, you can type them entirely in uppercase or lowercase if desired.

Most command names do not contain spaces. Exceptions include programming commands that call a subroutine, such as Case Call or OnCancel Call.

For information about calling statements, see “Using calling statements in PerfectScript macros” on page 46.

Understanding PerfectScript parameters

While a command name (see “Understanding PerfectScript command names” on page 39) specifies a feature, some tasks require more information than this feature name alone can provide. To capture the settings for a feature, some macro commands provide one or more parameters, which are passed to the macro compiler (or between statement blocks) to carry out the desired task. For example, the WordPerfect product command Backup() is associated with the Automatic Document Backup feature, which can be toggled by specifying a parameter, as in Backup(State:On!).

The type of information that is required by a parameter is represented by a data type. Each parameter accepts a specific data type. The most common data type for programming commands is Variable (see “Understanding PerfectScript variables” on page 10), while the most common data types for a product command are String (which specifies sequence of characters), Numeric (which specifies a numeric value), and Enumeration (which specifies one fixed value from a list of possible values).

In the macro-command syntax, data types are displayed in italicized text.

Parameters of data type Enumeration provide a set list of enumerations from which to choose. These enumerations are identified by a trailing exclamation point (!). For example, the WordPerfect command BoxCaptionRotation provides the parameter Rotation, which provides the following enumerations: Degrees90!, Degrees 180!, Degrees 270!, and None!.

In the following example of a WordPerfect macro command, Advance is the command name. Where is a parameter of data type Enumeration, and it is assigned the enumeration AdvanceDown!. Amount is a parameter of type Numeric, and it is assigned a numeric value of 1.0". The resulting macro command instructs WordPerfect to advance the insertion point down by one inch.

Advance (Where: AdvanceDown!; Amount: 1.0")
Understanding parameter syntax

The parameters for a macro command must be enclosed in a set of parentheses \( (\ ) \). Inserting a space between the command name and the left parenthesis is optional. However, using both a left parenthesis and a right parenthesis is mandatory; omitting either parenthesis is a common error than can prevent a macro from compiling.

Some programming commands and system variables have no parameters. Their syntax is the command name alone. Examples include the PerfectScript command \texttt{Pause} and the WordPerfect command \texttt{?FeatureBar}.

Some product commands have no parameters. Their syntax is usually written with empty parentheses. An example is the WordPerfect command \texttt{PosScreenUp ()}.

Using parentheses is mandatory for user-defined functions and procedures. For more information about functions and procedures, see “Understanding subroutines” on page 46.

A parameter is separated from its value by a colon (\texttt{:}). Inserting a space between colon and value is optional.

Each parameter ends with a semicolon (\texttt{;}). When a macro command requires several parameters, they must be placed in the order shown (and separated by their trailing semicolons). Inserting a space after a semicolon is optional.

For macro commands that have a single parameter, using the trailing semicolon is optional.

If you omit an optional parameter, you must include its semicolon in the syntax to keep the parameters that follow in their correct positions. Consider the following WordPerfect command:

\begin{quote}
\texttt{AbbreviationExpand (AbbreviationName:; Template: PersonalLibrary!)}
\end{quote}

This command can be shortened as follows:

\begin{quote}
\texttt{AbbreviationExpand (; PersonalLibrary!)}
\end{quote}

If a macro command accepts repeating parameters, the series must be enclosed in a set of braces (\texttt{\{\} }).

Let’s consider an example of parameter syntax in action. The \texttt{MakeItFit} command for WordPerfect has two parameters: \texttt{TargetPage} and \texttt{Adjust}. These parameters must be enclosed in a set of parentheses and separated by a semicolon. \texttt{Adjust} is a repeating parameter, so its instances must be separated by a semicolon, and this series of \texttt{Adjust} parameters must be enclosed in a set of braces. Here is an example of the proper syntax for this macro command:

\begin{quote}
\texttt{MakeItFit (TargetPage: 1; \{Adjust: FitTopMargin!; _
\texttt{Adjust: FitFontSize!;\})}
\end{quote}

Some macro statements are too lengthy to fit into a single line of macro code. If your macro editor automatically inserts a hard return at the end of every line, you must insert an underscore character (\texttt{\_}) at the end of each line that wraps. For information on specifying a macro editor, see “To specify settings for editing macros” on page 67.

One way to reduce the length of a macro command is to omit parameter names. For example, the WordPerfect command \texttt{InhibitInput (State: Off!)} works the same as \texttt{InhibitInput (Off!)}. Similarly, consider the WordPerfect command \texttt{GraphicsLineLength (Length: Numeric)}, which can be written as follows:

\begin{quote}
\texttt{GraphicsLineLength (Length: 2I)}
\end{quote}
or

\begin{quote}
\texttt{GraphicsLineLength (2I)}
\end{quote}
Understanding PerfectScript return values

Some macro commands let you retrieve data from various sources. For example, such commands can get the current date from the system, the current page number or document filename from an application, or a specific value from the Windows® registry. This information is usually returned as a return value. Many programming commands provide return values, as do some product commands.

WordPerfect returns this type of information primarily with system variables.

Handling return values

To handle a return value, you must assign it to a variable (see “Understanding PerfectScript variables” on page 10) or use it in an expression (see “Understanding expressions” on page 9). For example, the expression
text

The return value of a system variable is handled in the same manner as the return value of a macro command.

To ignore a return value, don’t handle it. For instance, some macro commands both change the state of an option and return the previous state of that option. If you want to change the state of an option without returning its previous state, you can ignore the return value.

Evaluating to return values

Macro commands that return values (and system variables) are said to “evaluate to” their return value. For example, because 

Similarly, because the WordPerfect system variable ?Name evaluates to the filename of the current document, you can use ?Name in an expression rather than using the filename of the current document.

Consider a macro that opens a file, writes text to it, and then closes it. To close the file, you can use the PerfectScript command CloseFile; however, this command also returns True if the file closes successfully (and False otherwise). Because CloseFile evaluates to its return value, you can use the following syntax to both close the file (where xxxx is the ID number of the file) and check whether it closes successfully:

If (CloseFile (FileID: xxxx))
...(statements to execute if the file was successfully closed)...
Else
...(statements to execute if the file was not successfully closed)...
EndIf

Return values can be handled outside of the context of a command. However, for return values of data type Enumeration, the returned enumeration has no meaning unless it is associated with a command. For example, the enumeration On! has no meaning by itself, but when used in the context of a command parameter, it indicates that that parameter is turned on. For this reason, PerfectScript evaluates return values of type Enumeration to the name of the command, followed by a period, followed by the enumeration (that is, command name.enumeration!).

For example, the syntax for the programming command Cancel is as follows:

For example, the syntax for the programming command Cancel is as follows:

`enumeration := Cancel (State: Enumeration)`
The `Cancel` command determines how a macro responds to a `Cancel` condition. It also returns the previous `Cancel state (On! or Off!)`. The following example sets the `Cancel state` to `On!`, stores the current state of the `Cancel command` in the variable `vVariable`, and types `Correct` in the current WordPerfect document:

```perfect
Cancel (State: On!)
vVariable := Cancel ()
If (vVariable = Cancel.On!)
  Type ("Correct")
EndIf
If (vVariable = "Cancel.Off!")
  Type ("Not Correct")
EndIf
```

If the optional parameter is omitted, the `Cancel state` can be returned without changing it. In this scenario, the `Type` command is not executed because the expression in the second `If` statement assumes that the enumeration returned by the `Cancel command` is a string. (Although enumerations look like strings, they are not.)

Enumerations have numeric equivalents. In the preceding example, `vVariable` is also equal to 1. If you were to follow the above example with the WordPerfect product command `Type(vVariable)`, the number 1 would be typed in the current document. The numeric equivalents of enumerations can change, so as previously mentioned, you must use the syntax `command name.enumeration!` to evaluate to return values.

### Using assignment statements in PerfectScript macros

Assignment statements assign the value of an expression (see "Understanding expressions" on page 9) to a variable (see "Understanding PerfectScript variables" on page 10). The assignment operator (`:=` or `=`) assigns the value of a right-operand expression to a left-operand variable.

For more information about assignment operators, see “Understanding assignment operators” on page 22.

For example, the result of the following assignment statement is that `x` equals John Doe:

```perfect
x := "John Doe"
```

The result of the following assignment statement is that `y` equals 5:

```perfect
y := 5
```

The result of the following assignment statement is that `z` equals the result of `3 + 4`:

```perfect
z := 3 + 4
```

### Using conditional statements in PerfectScript macros

Conditional statements execute a statement (or statement block) when a specified condition is met — that is, when an expression is true, or when a variable matches a constant.

You can use a conditional statement to present the user with a list of options.
Conditional statements include Case, If, and Switch. For more information about these conditions, see the following topics:
- Understanding Case conditions
- Understanding If conditions
- Understanding Switch conditions

**Understanding Case conditions**

A Case condition executes a Label statement when Test (that is, a user-defined variable) matches a constant value.

In the following example, Label (Start) is called if Test matches 1. If Test matches 2, then Label (Next) is called. If there is no match, then Label (Other) is called.

```perfectscript
Case (Test; {1; Start; 2; Next}; Other)
...(other statements)... Label (Start)
...statement block...
Label (Next)
...statement block...
Label (Other)
...statement block...
```

Case Call is a similar condition to Case. A Case Call statement expects a Return after a Label statement.

**Understanding If conditions**

An If condition uses an If-Else-Endif construction to execute a statement (or statement block) when an expression is true.

In the following example, the first statement block is executed if the expression \( x = 5 \) is true (that is, if \( x \) equals 5). If the expression \( x = 5 \) is not true, the second statement block is executed. Else is optional.

```perfectscript
If (x = 5)
...statement block...
Else
...statement block...
Endif
```

In the following example, the statement block is executed if Expression is true. If Expression is not true, the first statement after Endif is executed. (Note, then, that for this example to work, Expression must evaluate to either true or false.)

```perfectscript
If (Expression)
...statement block...
Endif
```
Understanding Switch conditions

A Switch condition uses a Switch-EndSwitch construction to execute a statement (or statement block) when \(<\text{Test}>\) matches \(<\text{Selector}>\).

In the following example, the statement block after Caseof \(<\text{Selector}>\) is executed if \(<\text{Test}>\) matches \(<\text{Selector}>\).

```
Switch (<Test>)
  Caseof <Selector>:
    ...statement block...
  Caseof <Selector>:
    ...statement block...
  Caseof <Selector>:
    ...statement block...
  Default:
    ...statement block...
EndSwitch
```

The statement block for a Switch condition can call a subroutine (see “Understanding subroutines” on page 46). If Continue follows a statement block, the next statement block is automatically executed.

By using a Switch condition, you can alter the sequential play of macro commands. For example, if the following pair of commands is used in a macro, the second command overrides the first (because the Paint Brush width is set to 25 pixels and subsequently changed to 75 pixels):

```
SetBrushWidth(BrushWidth: 25)
SetBrushWidth(BrushWidth: 75)
```

If you want the macro to choose between these SetBrushWidth commands, you can use a Switch condition. In the following example, a Paint Brush width of 25 pixels is set if variable Test equals 1. If Test equals 2, a Paint Brush width of 75 pixels is set. Finally, if Test equals any value except 1 or 2, a Paint Brush width of 50 pixels is set. (The value of Test can be determined by using a programming command such as Menu or GetNumber.)

```
Switch (Test)
  Caseof 1: SetBrushWidth(BrushWidth: 25)
  Caseof 2: SetBrushWidth(BrushWidth: 75)
  Default: SetBrushWidth(BrushWidth: 50)
Endswitch
```

The following example contains two CaseOf statements. If variable \(x\) equals 1, a subroutine named Start is called. If \(x\) equals 2, a subroutine named Stop is called.

```
Switch (x)
  CaseOf 1: CALL (Start)
  CaseOf 2: CALL (Stop)
EndSwitch
```
Using loop statements in PerfectScript macros

Loop statements execute a statement (or statement block) a specified number of times until (or while) an expression is true. When the loop ends, the macro continues to the next statement.

You can indent lines to show levels of loop statements.

Loop statements include For, Repeat, and While. For more information about loop statements, see the following sections:

• Understanding For loops
• Understanding Repeat loops
• Understanding While loops

Understanding For loops

A For loop uses a For-EndFor construction to execute a statement (or statement block) a specified number of times.

In the following example, <InitialValue> initializes <ControlVariable>. <TerminateExp> tests the value of <ControlVariable>. <IncrementExp> increases the value of <ControlVariable> until <TerminateExp> is false and the loop ends. (If <TerminateExp> is initially false, then the statements do not execute because the test is checked at the start of the loop.)

```
For (<ControlVariable>; <InitialValue>; <TerminateExp>; <IncrementExp>)
  ...statement block....
EndFor
```

In the following example, x is initialized to 1. The statement block executes while x is less than 5, and x is incremented by 1 at the end of each loop.

```
For(x; 1; x < 5; x + 1)
  ...statement block...
EndFor
```

Similar loop statements to For are ForEach and ForNext.

Understanding Repeat loops

A Repeat loop uses a Repeat-Until construction to execute a statement (or statement block) until an expression is true. All Repeat statements execute at least once because the expression is checked at the end of the loop.

In the following example, the statement block is executed until the expression x = 10 is true (that is, until x is greater than or equal to 10).

```
Repeat
  ...statement block...
Until (x >= 10)
```

However, the loop in the previous example does not end until the value of x changes to make the expression true. In the following example, the expression x := x + 1 is used to increment x by 1 at the end of each loop so that the loop ends when x is greater than or equal to 10.
Repeat
  ...statement block...
  x := x + 1
Until (x >= 10)

**Understanding While loops**

A While loop uses a **While-EndWhile** construction to execute a statement (or statement block) while an expression is true. A **While** statement cannot execute unless the expression is true because the expression is checked at the start of the loop.

In the following example, the statement block is executed while the expression \( x \leq 10 \) is true (that is, while \( x \) is less than or equal to 10). If \( x \) is greater than 10, the loop does not execute.

```plaintext
While (x <= 10)
  ...statement block...
EndWhile
```

However, the loop in the previous example does not end until the value of \( x \) changes to make the expression true. In the following example, the expression \( x := x + 1 \) is used to increment \( x \) by 1 at the end of each loop so that the loop executes while \( x \) is less than or equal to 10.

```plaintext
While (x<=10)
  ...statement block...
  x := x + 1
EndWhile
```

**Using calling statements in PerfectScript macros**

Calling statements involve a **subroutine**, which is one or more statements that are grouped as one item.

The larger a macro becomes, the more likely the need to create subroutines. Creating subroutines makes it easier to reuse code, and makes the macro easier to read and understand.

**Understanding subroutines**

A subroutine consists of a statement or a statement block that is played when called by a macro. Subroutines are useful because their statements are accessible to any part of a macro and can be called any number of times during play.

Consider the following example:

```plaintext
Call (SubExample)
  ...(other statements)...
Label (SubExample)
  ...statement block...
Return
```
In the preceding example, the calling statement `Call (SubExample)` calls (that is, directs macro play to) the subroutine `Label (SubExample)`. The `Return` command directs macro play to the statement that follows `Call (SubExample)`.

PerfectScript macros support the following types of subroutines:

- **labels** — act as a place holder, or marker, in a macro. For more information, see “Understanding PerfectScript labels” on page 47.
- **functions** and **procedures** — contain one or more statements that execute when called. Functions can be used to return a value, but procedures cannot. For more information, see “Understanding PerfectScript functions and procedures” on page 48.
- **callbacks** — enable a macro to respond immediately, and in specific ways, to events. For more information, see “Understanding PerfectScript callbacks” on page 58.

You can use subroutines to create calling statements. For more information, see “Creating calling statements from PerfectScript subroutines” on page 58.

### Understanding PerfectScript labels

A label is a subroutine that acts as a place holder, or marker, in a macro. A macro can call the label when a certain function needs to be performed. After that function is performed, the `Return` command redirects execution to the command that immediately follows the call to the label.

- Labels in the main body of a macro can execute without being called.
- Labels cannot hide macro code or macro variables.
- In general, macro labels are not used in structured programming unless they are needed within a function or procedure.

### Creating labels

A label is created by using the `Label` command, which has one parameter: the name of the subroutine. The `Label` command takes no optional parameters.

Label names have the following conventions:

- They must begin with a character.
- They must consist of one or more letters or numbers.
- They are limited to 30 characters. (If a label name is longer than 30 characters, only the first 30 characters are recognized.)
- They have an optional trailing @ sign.

Labels generally include one or more statements and are followed by the commands `Return` or `Quit`.

### Calling labels

Label statements execute in the same way as other macro statements and do not need to be called. However, if desired, you can call a label by using any of the following PerfectScript commands:

- `Call`
- `Go`
- `Case`
- `Case Call`
- `OnCancel`
- `OnCancel Call`
• OnError
• OnError Call
• OnNotFound
• OnNotFound Call
• OnDdeAdvise Call
• DdeExecuteExt

Structuring labels

The following is an example of a label:

```perfectscript
Call( MyLabel@ )
Quit
Label( MyLabel@ )
MessageBox (nVar; ""; "The Label was called.")
Return
```

Understanding PerfectScript functions and procedures

Functions and procedures are subroutines that contain one or more statements that execute when called. Most functions and procedures have parameters that receive values from a calling statement. However, some functions and procedures have zero parameters, in which case, they perform like a Label statement (see “Understanding PerfectScript labels” on page 47) except that they cannot execute unless called by the macro.

The difference between functions and procedures is that functions can return a value whereas procedures cannot.

Creating functions and procedures

Functions and procedures can be placed anywhere in a macro, or in a macro-library file (see “Storing functions and procedures in macro libraries” on page 55). Functions begin with the word FUNCTION and end with ENDFUNC, while procedures begin with the word PROCEDURE and end with ENDPROC.

A function or procedure cannot be defined inside another subroutine.

When you create a function or a procedure, you must name it. Function names and procedure names have the following conventions:

• They must begin with a character.
• They must consist of one or more letters or numbers.
• They are limited to 30 characters. (If a function name is longer than 30 characters, only the first 30 characters are recognized.)
• They can (optionally) have a trailing @ sign.

Functions accept any of the following:

• a Return statement that has no parameters (return 0)
• a value contained in a variable that is the result of a function
• an enumerated type that asserts a Cancel, Error, or Not Found condition
• a value contained in a variable that is the result of a function operation

Procedures accept any of the following:

• a Return statement that has no parameters (which direct macro execution to the statement that follows the caller of a procedure)
Using variables in functions and procedures

Function variables and procedure variables are local (or “private”) to the function or procedure. A variable with the same name as a function variable or procedure variable can be used elsewhere in the macro without conflict.

Variables are discussed, in general, in the section “Understanding PerfectScript variables” on page 10. However, the following details apply to using variables in functions and procedures:

- By default, variables are created as local variables. Local variables are not visible to subroutines unless declared as part of the subroutine. (In other words, local variables created outside of a subroutine cannot be used by that subroutine.) The reverse is also true: If a variable is declared inside a subroutine, that variable cannot be used or accessed outside of that subroutine. (The exception to this rule occurs when a local variable created inside a function is returned to the calling statement by using the Return command, or when a parameter is passed by reference.)

- Global variables can be accessed anywhere in the macro for the life of the macro. These variables can be accessed and modified within any function or procedure. They are also visible to and can be modified by a macro that is started by the macro that declared the global variable.

- Persistent variables, like global variables, can be accessed and modified at any time during macro execution. The major difference between persistent variables and global variables is that a persistent variable exists after the macro that declared it finishes execution. For example, if macro A declares a persistent variable named nTestVar and sets its initial value to 3, this variable is not discarded when macro A completes execution; if you run macro B, and macro B attempts to use nTestVar, the value of nTestVar is still 3.

To destroy a persistent variable, you must either use the Discard command or close the Macro Facility. Merge variables are persistent variables, so they can be used during macro execution and merge execution.

The scope of a variable refers to the portion of a macro in which a variable is accessible. According to scope rules, variables can be created with the same name if they do not hold the same scope. If the scope of same-named variables is the same, the contents of the original variable are modified by the next instance of that variable.

To understand how scope affects a macro, examine the following code:

```perfectscript
nHardReturn := NTOC(0f90ah)
Global sVariable1 := "I’m the first"
sVariable2 := "I’m the second"
sVariable3 := ""
sVariable4 := "I’m the fourth"
sVariable5 := CreateVariable( sVariable2; &sVariable3; sVariable4 )
MessageBox ( nRetVal; "Variable Values";
"sVariable1: " + sVariable1 + nHardReturn +
"sVariable2: " + sVariable2 + nHardReturn +
"sVariable3: " + sVariable3 + nHardReturn +
```

To understand how scope affects a macro, examine the following code:

```perfectscript
nHardReturn := NTOC(0f90ah)
Global sVariable1 := "I’m the first"
sVariable2 := "I’m the second"
sVariable3 := ""
sVariable4 := "I’m the fourth"
sVariable5 := CreateVariable( sVariable2; &sVariable3; sVariable4 )
MessageBox ( nRetVal; "Variable Values";
"sVariable1: " + sVariable1 + nHardReturn +
"sVariable2: " + sVariable2 + nHardReturn +
"sVariable3: " + sVariable3 + nHardReturn +
```

Understanding PerfectScript macros 49
"sVariable4: " + sVariable4 + nHardReturn +
"sVariable5: " + sVariable5)
Quit
Function CreateVariable( sVariable2; &sVariable3; sVariable4 )
sVariable1 := "I'm Global, I changed"
sVariable2 := "I’m not going to change"
sVariable3 := "I finally got initialized"
sVariable4 := "I am not really the Fourth"
Return ( sVariable4 )
EndFunc

In the preceding example, the only modified values are sVariable1 and sVariable3. sVariable1 is global and sVariable3 is passed to the function by address; they are the only values that the function can “see.” The other variables were not modified because they were not within the scope of the function.

In the preceding example, the variable sVariable4 may be in question. When this variable is passed to the function, a copy of the variable is made inside the function. This variable contains the same content and the same name as the original sVariable4, but it can be seen only by the function. The content of this second variable is modified and returned, and assigned, to a new variable called sVariable5.

Now consider the following example:

Global ( X )
X = "My name is John Doe"
DoCount() 
MessageBox ( retVal; "Variable"; X )
Quit
Procedure DoCount()
x = 1
ForNext ( y; 1; 5 )
x = x * 10
EndFor
EndProc

In the preceding example, variable X would be equal to "My name is John Doe." if not declared global. The variable x declared inside the DoCount procedure would have been local to that procedure and would not have modified the contents of the original variable. Such problems become very apparent in large macros that include many variables. (This example also illustrates the need to give variables names that are meaningful.)

Use global or persistent variables only when necessary. When variables are declared as global or persistent and are visible to all sections of a macro, they may be changed or altered in ways that lead to unexpected behavior in your macros.
Passing variables to functions and procedures

Sometimes, you must pass parameters to functions or procedures. There are two ways to pass parameters to subroutines: passing variables by value and passing variables by reference.

When a variable is passed by value as a parameter to a subroutine, a copy of the variable is made in a different location in memory under a different name.

When a variable is passed by reference as a parameter to a subroutine, the address of the variable is used to provide direct access to that variable. In this way, you can use the original variable inside the subroutine that you call. Using this method lets you reduce memory usage and use fewer global variables in your macro.

The & operator is used when passing a variable by address. This operator is called the “Address Operator,” and it tells the function or procedure to create a reference for this variable. The Address Operator is required both in the procedure call and in the procedure parameter list.

Here is an example of passing the address of a variable to modify its value. Procedures, unlike functions, cannot return values; however, in this case, the original value of the variable is modified by passing the variable by address to the procedure.

```perfectscript
nNumber := 10
ChangeNumber ( &nNumber )
MessageBox (retVal; "New Value"; "The variable nNumber has been modified. The new value is " + nNumber + ".")
Quit
```

Procedure ChangeNumber( &nNum )
```
nNum := nNum + 45
EndProc
```

If the preceding macro code were compiled and run, the MessageBox would display a value of 55.

A function can return only one value. Sometimes, however, you need a function to generate two values to be returned and used later in the macro. In the following example, two values must be returned or changed: OriginalCount and vBMName. You can return only one value by using the Return command, so the other value can be modified by passing the other variable by address.

```
nOriginalCount := 0
MessageBox ( retval; "Original Value"; nOriginalCount )
ForEach ( sString; {"One"; "Two"; "Three"; "Four"; "Five"})
  //The line below passes nOriginalCount by address
  sBookMarkName := CreateBookMarkName( sString; &nOriginalCount )
  Prompt( "BookMark Names"; "New bookmark name: " + sBookMarkName; NoButtons! )
  Wait( 5 )
EndFor
EndPrompt
MessageBox ( retval; "New Value"; nOriginalCount )
Quit
```
Function CreateBookMarkName( sInputString ; &nCount)
    nCount := nCount + 1
    sBMName := sInputString + "_" + nCount
    Return ( sBMName )
EndFunc

By passing the variable OriginalCount by address to the CreateBookMarkName function, we can manipulate the original value of the variable without having to return the variable. When the function receives the variable, it does not make a copy but references the original variable declared at the beginning of the code.

Passing arrays to functions and procedures

Like normal variables, arrays can be passed to subroutines. (For more information, see “Working with arrays” on page 18.) If you are passing the entire array, you must assign a value to each array element; any undefined element will be identified as an error at run-time.

Arrays can be passed by address.

Consider the following example:

Declare aOldArray[10]
ForNext ( x; 1; 10 )
    // initialize all elements
    aOldArray[x] := x
EndFor

aNewArray[] := Test( aOldArray[] )
    // aNewArray[] is assigned the returned value
Type( aNewArray[10] )
    // aNewArray[10] equals 100
HardReturn()
Type( aOldArray[10] )
    // aOldArray[10] equal to 10
Quit
Function Test( aTestArray[] )
    ForNext( x; 1; 10 )
        // multiply all elements by 10
        aTestArray[x] := x * 10
    EndFor
Return( aTestArray[] )
EndFunc

In the preceding example, if you precede the calling-statement parameter and the corresponding function parameter with an ampersand (&), 100 is returned in aOldArray[10], and all of the elements in aOldArray[] are modified to contain the new values in aNewArray[]. The following code illustrates this change.
Declare aOldArray[10]
ForNext ( x; 1; 10 )
// initialize all elements
aOldArray[x] := x
EndFor
aNewArray[ ] = Test( &aOldArray[ ] )
// aNewArray[] is assigned the returned value
Type( aNewArray[10] )
// aNewArray[10] equals 100
HardReturn()
Type( aOldArray[10] )
// aOldArray[10] equal to 100
Quit
Function Test( &aTestArray[ ] )
ForNext( x; 1; 10 )
// multiply all elements by 10
aTestArray[x] := x * 10
EndFor
Return( aTestArray[ ] )
EndFunc

Calling functions and procedures

To create a calling statement from a function or procedure, you specify the name of the function or procedure and one or more parameters that contain values passed to the function or procedure. (If there are no parameters, empty parentheses must follow the function name or procedure name.)

The following rules apply to calling functions and procedures:

- Functions and procedures do not execute unless they are called. They can be called from within another subroutine, or they can be called recursively (that is, they can call themselves).
- The number of parameters in a calling statement must match the number of parameters in the function or procedure. When a function or procedure requires multiple parameters, use semicolons (;) to separate those parameters.

Structuring functions

The basic structure of a function is as follows:

```pascal
Function MyFunction()
    . . . statement block
EndFunction
```

The `Function` keyword is followed by the actual function name. Statements are added to the function, after which the function is ended by the `EndFunc` or `EndFunction` keyword. A function can return a value by means of the `Return` command, as follows:
nOriginalValue := 6
nNewValue := AddNumbers( nOriginalValue )
MessageBox( nRetVal; "New Value"; "The old value was " + nOriginalValue + ". The new value is " + nNewValue + "."; IconInformation! )
Quit
Function AddNumbers( nInputValue )
nTempValue := nInputValue + 13
Return (nTempValue)
EndFunc

In the preceding example, nOriginalValue is initialized with a value of 6. This value is passed as a parameter to the AddNumbers function. The AddNumbers function adds 13 to nInputValue and stores the result in nTempValue. nTempValue is returned to the calling statement as a parameter of the Return command. The return value is assigned to nNewValue. The values of the nOriginalValue and nNewValue variables are then displayed by using the MessageBox command.

In the preceding example, the value of nOriginalValue had to be passed as a parameter to the function. If the AddNumbers macro function had attempted to access nOriginalValue without passing the value to the function, an error would have occurred. This is because nOriginalValue was out of scope of the AddNumbers function.

**Structuring procedures**

The basic structure of a procedure is as follows:

```
Procedure MyProcedureName( )
    . . . statement block
EndProc
```

The `Procedure` command begins the block of code, with the actual name of the procedure following. The end of the procedure is marked by the `EndProc` or `EndProcedure` keyword. The contents of the subroutine are placed between the `Procedure` and `EndProcedure` commands. If a procedure requires parameters, the code is similar to the following:

```
Procedure MyProcedureName( value1; value2 )
    . . . statement block
EndProc
```

To call the preceding procedure, you would use the following code:

```
MyProcedureName( 1; 2 )
```

An example of a procedure call without parameters would resemble the following:

```
Procedure CreateFooter()
FooterA (Create!)
FontSize(10p)
InsertFilenameWithPath ()
Tab()
DateText ()
```
FlushRight ()
PageNumberDisplay ()
SubstructureExit ()
EndProc

In the preceding example, the CreateFooter procedure creates a footer in a document. This footer contains the text for path and filename, the date, and a page number — all formatted by using the specified formatting codes. The procedure does not receive any parameters.

We could modify the CreateFooter procedure to accept a value for the font size:

```perfectscript
CreateFooter (10)
// Calls the procedure CreateFooter with the FontSize of // 10
Quit
Procedure CreateFooter( nFontSize )
nFontSize := 16.6 * nFontSize
// This calculates the correct font size value in WP units
FooterA (Create!)
FontSize( nFontSize)
// Recalculated value used
InsertFilenameWithPath ()
Tab()
DateText ()
FlushRight ()
PageNumberDisplay ()
SubstructureExit ()
EndProc
```

In the preceding example, the call made by the CreateFooter command passes one value, 10, to the procedure. This value is received into a procedure variable that is named nFontSize. This variable can be used and manipulated only inside the procedure. In the example, a calculation is made to determine the proper font height in WordPerfect units, and then the variable is used by the FontSize command. After this routine has ended, the variable is discarded by PerfectScript.

**Storing functions and procedures in macro libraries**

Macro libraries contain files that store functions or procedures (or both) that can be called from another macro and must be compiled.

The following example contains two functions. Function Add receives a value in variable x. 50 is added to x and returned to the caller of the function. Function Subtract receives a value in another variable named x. 25 is subtracted from x and returned to the caller of the function.

```perfectscript
Function Add(x)
    x := x + 50
Return (x)
```
Using calling statements in PerfectScript macros

The *Use* command lets you use functions and procedures that are stored in another macro. This command usually precedes calling statements to a macro library.

If the preceding example were saved and compiled as *LIBRARY.WCM*, its Add and Subtract functions could be called as in the following example. After function Add is called, 100 is returned in variable \( z \). After function Subtract is called, 75 is returned in variable \( z \). The computer then beeps because the expression \( z = 75 \) is true.

```application
Application (WP; "WordPerfect"; Default; "EN")
Use ("C:\...\LIBRARY.WCM")
z := Add(50)
z := Subtract(z)
If (z = 75)
  Beep // computer beeps because \( z \) equals 75
EndIf
```

The preceding example can be written in shorthand notation, as follows:

```application
Application (WP; "WordPerfect"; Default; "EN")
Use ("C:\...\LIBRARY.WCM")
z := Add(Subtract(50))
If (z = 75)
  Beep // computer beeps because \( z \) equals 75
EndIf
```

*Use* is a non-executing statement that can occur anywhere in a macro. A macro that makes a call to a function or procedure in another macro file must include a *Use* statement that identifies the file.

A macro library that includes only function statements or procedure statements (or both) must be compiled like any macro file. PerfectScript automatically compiles uncompiled libraries. Macro execution stops if the macro library file will not compile.

Many programmers create library files that contain just functions and procedures that may be used with other macros. These functions and procedures are generic enough to be applicable to many different macros.

Here is an example of a macro that uses a function from another macro:

```macro
Macro1
Use("Library.wcm")
vDefDir := GetMyDefaultDirectory()
MessageBox ( retVal; "Docs Directory"; vDefDir"")
Quit
```
Understanding PerfectScript macros

Library.wcm (macro library that contains the following code)

Function GetMyDefaultDirectory()
Return (?PathDocument)
EndFunc

If one macro “uses” another macro, the second macro becomes a dependent of the main macro. If you want to deploy the main macro throughout your organization or send it to a customer, you must include the second macro.

Macro files included by using multiple Use commands are searched from beginning to the end of the macro. Thus, a parent macro always calls the first occurrence of a function or procedure with the same name in different Use files. Consider the following example:

Macro1
Use( "Library1.wcm"
Use( "Library2.wcm"

vDefDir := GetMyDefaultDirectory()
MessageBox ( retVal; "Docs Directory";
vDefDir"
)
Quit

Library1.wcm (contains)
Function GetMyDefaultDirectory()
Return (?PathDocument)
EndFunc

Library2.wcm (contains)
Function GetMyDefaultDirectory()
Return (?PathCurrent)
EndFunc

In the preceding example, the library function called by the macro is Library1.wcm because it is the first macro library included by Macro1.

When a macro uses a subroutine in a macro library, playing that macro incurs an error if the syntax of the call to the subroutine is incorrect. Using a function prototype or procedure prototype forces the compiler to check the parameter count of a function or procedure in a macro library; if the syntax is incorrect, a compiler error occurs.

The prototype directs the compiler to validate the syntax of a function or procedure. Creating a prototype helps you keep track of the parameters of a function or procedure. Place prototypes at the beginning of your macro, as in the following example:

Function Prototype Check(nBeep; HdReturn)
HdReturn := NTOC(0F90Ah)
x := 4
nBeep := 1
While(x = 4)
BEEP
x := Check(nBeep; HdReturn)
nBeep := nBeep + 1
EndWhile
MessageBox( retVal; "RETURN"; "The value of variable vStatus (" + x + "+ ") is returned to variable x, which ends the loop."; IconExclamation!)
Function Check(nBeep; HdReturn)
MESSAGEBOX(vStatus; "FUNCTION EXAMPLE"; "Beeps: " + nBeep + 
HdReturn + HdReturn + "Choose Retry to beep again." + HdReturn; IconInformation! | RetryCancel!)
RETURN(vStatus)
EndFunc

Understanding PerfectScript callbacks

Callbacks are special functions that enable a macro to respond immediately, and in specific ways, to events. When a macro executes a callback routine, the macro system automatically creates variables that are accessible to that callback. The callback can access the parameter array for information about the callback event, and the callback can place its return value (if any) in the return variable.

The parameters for a callback are placed into a global array variable that has the same name as the callback label. Any return value for the callback routine is placed in a (non-array) global variable that has the same name as the callback label. For example, parameters would be passed to callback routine 'MsgHandler' in an array called 'MsgHandler[ ]', and any return value would be placed into a variable called 'MsgHandler'.

PerfectScript currently supports three types of callbacks, all of which are discussed in greater detail in the “Support for callback entries” topic in the PerfectScript Command Reference section of the Macro Help (psh.chm):
- product-command callbacks
- dialog-box callbacks
- message-box callbacks

Perhaps the most useful of these callback types is the dialog-box callback, which lets the macro gather information from an active dialog box (rather than waiting until the dialog box is closed to gather that information). For more information on dialog-box callbacks, see “Setting up callbacks for PerfectScript dialog boxes” on page 96.

Creating calling statements from PerfectScript subroutines

You can create calling statements by using PerfectScript commands, such as the following:
- Call — calls the specified subroutine. For more information, see “Using the Call command in calling statements” on page 59.
• Go — jumps to the specified subroutine. For more information, see “Using the Go command in calling statements” on page 59.

• Case or Case Call — creates a conditional statement that tests for matching expressions, and calls a label if a match is found. For more information, see “Understanding Case conditions” on page 43.

For more information about these (and other) PerfectScript commands, please see the PerfectScript Command Reference in the Macro Help (psh.chm).

Using the Call command in calling statements

The Call command has one parameter, which is the name of a subroutine to call. The Return command directs macro execution to the statement that follows Call.

In the following example, Call (ExSub) directs macro execution to Label (ExSub), where the statement block is executed. Return directs macro execution to the first statement after Call (ExSub).

```
Call (ExSub)
...other statements...
Label (ExSub)
...statement block...
Return
```

Using a subroutine name to form a calling statement performs the same action as creating a Call statement that specifies that subroutine name as a parameter. For example, a function or procedure that is named InitializeVariables can be called as follows:

```
Call InitializeVariables (<Parameter>; <Parameter>)
```

or

```
InitializeVariables (<Parameter>; <Parameter>)
```

If the second example calls a function, you can assign a return value to a variable with a statement such as the following:

```
x := InitializeVariables (<Parameter>; <Parameter>)
```

For information about return values, see “Understanding PerfectScript return values” on page 41. For information about variables, see “Understanding PerfectScript variables” on page 10.

Using the Go command in calling statements

The Go command has one parameter, which is the name of a subroutine to which to jump. Macro execution continues from the point of the subroutine and does not return (so statements between Go and the subroutine do not execute). Return ends a macro or directs macro execution to the statement that follows a Run command.

In the following example, Go (ExSub) directs macro execution to Label (ExSub), where the statement block is executed. Return ends the macro.

```
Go (ExSub)
...other statements...
Label (ExSub)
...statement block...
Return
```
Using comment statements in PerfectScript macros

Comment statements contain notes and other information that do not affect macro play. You can use comment statements to explain the purpose of your macro, describe its components, or to prevent a statement from playing.

A comment statement can consist of a single line of text or instead span several lines of text. However, the syntax for a single-line comment statement is different from that of a multi-line comment statement:
• single-line comment statement — begins with // and ends with a hard return
• multi-line comment statement — begins with /* and ends with */

Accessing external applications in PerfectScript macros

PerfectScript provides the following advanced features, which let macros access applications outside of WordPerfect Office:
• OLE Automation — lets PerfectScript control applications that support OLE. For more information, see “Understanding OLE Automation” on page 60.
• Dynamic Data Exchange (DDE) — lets PerfectScript control applications that support DDE. For more information, see “Understanding Dynamic Data Exchange (DDE)” on page 62.

Understanding OLE Automation

PerfectScript can send commands that control WordPerfect, Quattro Pro, and Presentations. However, through a Windows-standard interface known as OLE Automation, PerfectScript can send commands that control other OLE-enabled applications, which are called OLE Automation servers. For this reason, PerfectScript is called an OLE Automation controller.

OLE Automation servers define OLE Automation objects, which have names that are registered with Windows. (For information about the OLE Automation objects that are defined for an application, refer to the manufacturer’s documentation for that application.)

OLE Automation objects can have methods and properties.

A method is a command or function that performs an action on an object. Many methods, like product commands, have parameters and return values. Here is a sample method for the OLE Automation object Excel.Application:

```
Worksheets ().Activate
```

A property is an object value that can be retrieved and set. Many properties have parameters and return values. Unlike WordPerfect system variables, many properties can be set by placing the property name on the left side of an assignment statement (see “Using assignment statements in PerfectScript macros” on page 42). Properties can take parameters when being retrieved (similarly to a method call) or when being set. Here is a sample property for the OLE Automation object Excel.Application:

```
ActiveSheet.Name
```

!important: You must set optional parameters when using OLE Automation.
Working with OLE Automation objects

Before an OLE Automation object can be used in a PerfectScript macro, the Object statement must be used. The Object statement is similar to the Application statement for products. It defines an object-prefix variable that is used to call methods and to retrieve and set object properties. The name of the object is also specified, along with information about whether this prefix is to be used as the default object for non-prefixed methods and properties.

The object-prefix variable that is specified in the Object statement identifies a variable that contains an instance handle to the object at run-time. As a variable, this prefix can be used in many places where most, but not all, other macro variables can be used. For example, the macro language operators + and – cannot be used with object variables, and automatic type conversions are not defined for object variables. Object variables can be assigned to other object variables of the same type, and they can be passed as parameters to user-defined macro routines.

As with other macro variables, object variables exist at run-time in a specific macro variable pool. You can specify this pool by using Declare, Local, Global and Persist statements (see “Understanding PerfectScript variables” on page 10). If the object variable is not specified, it exists in the local variable pool (unless PersistAll is in effect, in which case the object variable exists in the persistent variable pool).

Before making a call to the methods for an object, and before retrieving or setting the properties for an object, an instance handle to a specific object must be obtained through the CreateObject statement or the GetObject statement. These statements return an instance handle to a specific instance of an object. Because many OLE Automation servers support multiple instances of the objects they define, an instance handle to a specific object must be obtained to distinguish instances of the same object. Multiple object variables can be created, and multiple instances can be obtained if the OLE Automation server supports multiple instances.

After getting an instance handle, an object variable is said to be connected to the OLE Automation server. Like other variables, the Exists statement can be used on object variables to determine whether an object variable exists and, if so, which variable pool it exists in. Even if an object variable exists, it may not be currently connected to the OLE Automation server, but this connection information can be obtained from the ObjectInfo command.

When an instance of an OLE Automation object is no longer needed, the connection can be terminated by using the Discard statement. Variables for OLE Automation objects, like other variables, are automatically discarded when the macro terminates or when the user-defined routine in which the variable is defined ends. This discarding automatically disconnects the object from an OLE Automation server (if connected to one).

After an object is connected to its OLE Automation server, the methods and properties of that object can be accessed by prefixing the method name or property name with the variable name for the OLE Automation object followed by a period (.). If the OLE object variable is the default object variable (specified by Default! in the Object statement, or specified in a With statement), the object-prefix variable can be replaced by two leading periods (..). Leading periods are necessary to inform the macro compiler that the method name being called is not the name of a user-defined macro routine but the method name (or property name) of the current default OLE Automation object.

A macro can use more than one application product and OLE Automation object. Commands to the non-default application or OLE Automation object require a prefix, which is specified in a PerfectScript Application or Object statement. In the example A1.AboutDlg (), the prefix A1. tells the compiler to use the application or object that is assigned A1 in a PerfectScript Application or Object statement.
To establish a new default object for a localized block of code, you can use a `With-EndWith` compound statement. The object-prefix variable is specified in the `With` statement; all statements to access methods, and properties preceded by two periods (..) until the `EndWith` statement, are assumed to be references to that object.

The `NewDefault` statement can be used to establish a new default object-variable prefix for the remainder of a macro (or until the macro encounters another `NewDefault` statement).

**For more information**

For more information about OLE Automation, please see the following:

- PerfectScript support: the topic “Support for OLE Automation” in the PerfectScript Command Reference section of the Macro Help (`psh.chm`)
- WordPerfect support: “Using OLE Automation” and “Understanding OLE Automation” in the main WordPerfect Help (`wpwp.chm`)
- Quattro Pro support: “Using OLE Automation” in the main Quattro Pro Help (`qp.chm`)

See also “Using the WordPerfect Office Software Development Kit (SDK)” on page 63.

**Understanding Dynamic Data Exchange (DDE)**

*Dynamic Data Exchange (DDE) Execute* is a Windows feature that enhances product integration by allowing applications to instruct each other to perform specific tasks (that is, to execute commands). For example, you can use the DDE Execute feature to create macros in WordPerfect that send commands to control other Windows applications that accept DDE Execute strings.

WordPerfect, Quattro Pro, and Presentations are DDE servers, and they provide support to DDE clients through the PerfectScript language.

An instance of DDE-based communication between two applications is called a *DDE conversation*. WordPerfect, Quattro Pro, and Presentations each handle DDE conversations in their own way.

For more detailed information about using DDE, see the WordPerfect Office Software Development Kit (SDK), which is included in the Professional Edition of WordPerfect Office. For more information, see “Using the WordPerfect Office Software Development Kit (SDK)” on page 63.

**Understanding DDE conversations for WordPerfect**

WordPerfect can act as a server for DDEExecute commands.

To access the PerfectScript-based product commands for WordPerfect, the DDE client must initiate a DDE conversation by using `WPWin15_Macros` as the service name and `Commands` as the topic name.

**Understanding DDE conversations for Quattro Pro**

Quattro Pro can act as a server for DDERequest commands.

To access request topics, application status, or properties from Quattro Pro, the DDE client must initiate a DDE conversation by using `QPW` as the service name and `System` as the topic name.

To read and write to spreadsheet cells, or to execute PerfectScript-based product commands for Quattro Pro, the DDE client must initiate a DDE conversation by using `QPW` as the service name and the path and file of an open notebook as the topic name.
**Understanding DDE conversations for Presentations**

Any eligible Windows application can use the DDE Execute feature to control Presentations. To begin, the DDE client must initiate a DDE conversation by using **Presentations** as the service name and **Command** as the topic name. Before terminating the conversation, the client can send DDE Execute strings that include PerfectScript-based product commands for Presentations (provided that those commands do not contain variables or expressions).

Eligible Windows applications can also send commands to Presentations as a DDE Request item. In this scenario, Presentations returns an ANSI® text string that represents the return value of the command.

The DDE client must send DDE Execute strings and DDE Request items in ANSI text format. If Presentations returns an error, the DDE client can determine what went wrong by sending a DDE Request item for **LastCmdError**; Presentations then returns an ANSI text string that contains a three-digit error code and a description of the error.

**Learning more about PerfectScript macros**

If you want to learn more about PerfectScript macros, you can consult the WordPerfect Office Software Development Kit (SDK) or the Corel website.

This section contains the following topics:
- Using the WordPerfect Office Help
- Using the WordPerfect Office Software Development Kit (SDK)

**Using the WordPerfect Office Help**

The main Help files for WordPerfect, Quattro Pro, and Presentations contain additional information on PerfectScript macros.
- **WordPerfect Help (wpwp.chm)**: see the PerfectScript topics in “Using macros and other automation features”
- **Quattro Pro Help (qp.chm)**: see the PerfectScript topics in “Using macros”
- **Presentations Help (wpr.chm)**: see “Working with PerfectScript macros”

**Using the WordPerfect Office Software Development Kit (SDK)**

The WordPerfect Office Software Development Kit (SDK) is a set of tools that lets you customize WordPerfect Office applications for commercial or business use. The WordPerfect Office SDK includes documentation, samples, and various tools and utilities.

The WordPerfect Office SDK is included with certain editions of WordPerfect Office.
Getting started with PerfectScript macros

Now that you understand the basics about PerfectScript, you are ready to get started with macros by learning how to use the PerfectScript utility.

This section contains the following topics:
• “Using the PerfectScript utility” on page 65
• “Specifying PerfectScript settings” on page 66

Using the PerfectScript utility

To get started with PerfectScript macros for WordPerfect Office, you can use the PerfectScript utility.

WordPerfect, Quattro Pro, and Presentations provide a Tools ➤ Macro menu, which lets you work with macros from directly within the application. (WordPerfect also provides a Tools ➤ Template macro menu, which lets you work with template macros and QuickMacros from directly within WordPerfect.) For information about working with macros from directly within WordPerfect, Quattro Pro, or Presentations, please see the Help file for the application.

The PerfectScript utility provides the following tools for creating PerfectScript macros:
• Command Browser — displays a list of all available programming commands for PerfectScript, as well as all available product commands for WordPerfect, Quattro Pro, and Presentations.
• Dialog Editor — lets you create dialog boxes for your macros.

The PerfectScript utility provides context-sensitive Help for many of its controls, as well as Help for all of the macro commands in its Command Browser.

You can quit the PerfectScript utility when you have finished using it.

This section contains the following procedures:
• To start the PerfectScript utility
• To display the Command Browser
• To display the Dialog Editor
• To access context-sensitive Help for the PerfectScript utility
• To access Help for a macro command
• To quit the PerfectScript utility

To start the PerfectScript utility

• On the Windows taskbar, click Start ➤ All programs ➤ WordPerfect Office X6 ➤ Utilities ➤ PerfectScript.

To display the Command Browser

• In the PerfectScript utility, click Help ➤ Macro Command Browser.

For information about using the Command Browser to create macros, see “Writing and editing PerfectScript macros” on page 71.
To display the Dialog Editor

• In the PerfectScript utility, click Tools › Dialog Editor.

The Dialog Editor works only with macros that are in WordPerfect format. For this reason, you can open the Dialog Editor from directly within WordPerfect by clicking Dialog Editor on the Macro toolbar when editing a macro.

For information about using the Dialog Editor, see “Creating UI for PerfectScript macros” on page 79.

To access context-sensitive Help for the PerfectScript utility

• Click (or press Shift + F1), and then click the desired control.

To access Help for a macro command

• In the Command Browser, right-click the desired command.

To quit the PerfectScript utility

• Click File › Exit.

Specifying PerfectScript settings

From within the PerfectScript utility, you can specify various PerfectScript settings.

This section contains the following procedures:
• To specify general macro settings
• To specify settings for compiling macros
• To specify settings for debugging macros
• To specify settings for editing macros
• To specify settings for playing macros
• To specify settings for recording macros
• To specify settings for the PerfectScript toolbar

To specify general macro settings

1 Click Tools › Settings, and then click the General tab.
2 Do any of the following:
   • Specify a default macro folder.
   • Enable the Use enhanced file dialogs check box if you want to view detailed dialog-box information.
   • Enable the Display icons in system tray check box if you want to display macro icons in the Windows system tray.
   • Enable the Check file associations on startup check box if you want to check file associations at startup.

   Click Reset all to defaults to return all settings to their original state.
To specify settings for compiling macros

1. Click Tools ➤ Settings, and then click the Compile tab.
2. Enable any of the following check boxes:
   - Show progress
   - Include debug information
   - Warn when using unsupported features
   - Generate listing file

To specify settings for debugging macros

1. Click Tools ➤ Settings, and then click the Debug tab.
2. Do any of the following:
   - Enable the Invoke Debugger on macro start check box, if you want.
   - Enable the Invoke Debugger on errors check box, if you want.
   - Enable the Debugger event logging check box, if you want.
   - In the Animate settings area, enable the desired ‘Run to’ option, and specify the desired delay (in seconds).

   Debug, a menu item for the Windows shell, appears on the context menu for the desktop icon of any macro.

To specify settings for editing macros

1. Click Tools ➤ Settings, and then click the Edit tab.
2. Specify the path and filename of the macro editor that you want to use.
3. Specify a file format that is compatible with the macro editor that you’ve chosen.

   You must specify a macro editor if you want to edit macros.

   Some macro statements are too lengthy to fit into a single line of macro code. If your macro editor automatically inserts a hard return at the end of every line, you must insert an underscore character ( _ ) at the end of each line that wraps.

   Although you can use any ASCII-based text editor to edit macros, some editors offer special features. For example,
   - When you use Notepad, you can create a macro just by specifying its filename.
   - When you use WordPerfect, you can use the PerfectScript Command Inserter (on the Macro toolbar) to insert macro commands into your macros or to edit existing macro commands.

To specify settings for playing macros

1. Click Tools ➤ Settings, and then click the Play tab.
2. Do any of the following:
   - Specify a value in the Play repeat count box.
   - Enable the Security for JavaScript® check box, if you want.
   - Enable the Show elapsed time check box, if you want.
To specify settings for recording macros

1. Click **Tools** ➤ **Settings**, and then click the **Record** tab.
2. Do any of the following:
   - From the **Script language** list box, choose the script language that you want to use.
   - From the **File format** list box, choose the file format in which you want to save macros. (This file format must be compatible with the macro editor that you specify on the **Edit** page.)
   - From the **Parameters per line** list box, choose **One** or **Multiple** to set the number of parameters in each macro line.
   - In the **Maximum line length** box, specify a maximum line length for macro text.
   - Enable the **Named parameters required** check box if you want to use only named parameters in your macros.
   - Enable the **Record product prefixes on all commands** if you want to insert product prefixes in your macros.

To specify settings for the PerfectScript toolbar

1. Click **Tools** ➤ **Settings**, and then click the **Toolbar** tab.
2. Do any of the following:
   - Enable the **Use large icons on toolbar buttons** check box, if you want.
   - Enable the **Show text on toolbar buttons** check box, if you want.
   - Assign macros to the available toolbar buttons, if you want. The macro buttons on the PerfectScript toolbar can be configured to play any desired macro.

> The PerfectScript toolbar appears as a flat toolbar, similarly to other toolbars in WordPerfect Office.
Creating PerfectScript macros

Now that you know how to use the PerfectScript utility, you are ready to create PerfectScript macros.

This section contains the following topics:
• “Migrating legacy PerfectScript macros” on page 69
• "Recording PerfectScript macros” on page 70
• "Writing and editing PerfectScript macros” on page 71
• “Compiling PerfectScript macros” on page 74
• “Playing PerfectScript macros” on page 76
• “Making PerfectScript macros user-friendly” on page 77

Migrating legacy PerfectScript macros

You can use the PerfectScript utility to migrate PerfectScript macros from previous versions of WordPerfect Office to a later version of the software.

⚠️ With each new version of WordPerfect Office, some commands are added, some commands are changed, and some commands become obsolete and are removed altogether. Because of such changes, macros from earlier versions of WordPerfect Office might need minor corrections when migrated to a later version of the software.

This section contains the following procedures:
• To migrate a legacy PerfectScript macro

Converting non-PerfectScript macros to PerfectScript format

You may also be able to use the migration process to convert a non-PerfectScript macro to PerfectScript format. (For example, if you record a macro in a non-PerfectScript language — JavaScript, Microsoft Visual Basic, Corel SCRIPT™, or Borland® Delphi®, as explained in “To specify settings for recording macros” on page 68 — you may subsequently want to convert that macro to PerfectScript format.) However, you must be sure to take certain precautions when converting macros.

First, be sure to review each variable, label, procedure, and function name in your existing macro, and change any names that have become reserved words. Each new version of WordPerfect Office adds PerfectScript keywords, which are reserved words that cannot be used as variable or label names in macros; in addition, the names of all macro commands are considered reserved words because they cannot be used as variable or label names. For more information on reserved words, please see the “Reserved words” topic in the PerfectScript Command Reference section of the Macro Help (psh.chm).

Next, be sure to review any arrays in your existing macro (see “Working with arrays” on page 18). Please note the following:
• You can pass array slices to repeating parameter groups of commands. In early versions of PerfectScript, you could pass only entire arrays. Empty slices can now be specified, if the end index is less than the first index.
• Negative array indexes can be used in array slices. If negative, the index is considered to be end-relative, not start-relative. An index of \([-1]\) represents the last element, \([-2]\) represents the second-to-last element, and so on.
• You can assign non-arrays to arrays, and arrays to non-arrays. If an array is assigned to a non-array variable, the assignment is actually made to the array variable with the same name as the non-array variable, and the non-array variable is left untouched. If a non-array is assigned to an array variable, the non-array value is converted into a single element array with that value, and it is assigned to the array variable.

• Non-array values and arrays can be combined by using the operators `^^` or `\`. However, undefined array elements will be ignored and skipped over.

Non-array values and arrays can also be combined by using the following operators (although undefined array elements will be ignored and skipped over):

  • unary operators — for information, see “Understanding PerfectScript operators” on page 21.
  • arithmetic operators — for information, see “Understanding assignment operators” on page 22.
  • relational (comparison) operators — for information, see “Understanding relational operators” on page 24.
  • logical operators — for information, see “Understanding logical operators” on page 26.
  • bitwise operators — for information, see “Understanding bitwise operators” on page 28.
  • JavaScript operators — for information on specifying JavaScript as the macro-recording language, see “To specify settings for recording macros” on page 68.

Finally, when converting a native QuattroPro macro to PerfectScript format, you may want to know how to manually convert the syntax of each Quattro Pro command. For more information, see “Understanding Quattro Pro macros” on page 129.

To migrate a legacy PerfectScript macro

1. In the PerfectScript utility for the later version of WordPerfect Office, click File ➔ Play.
2. Select the legacy macro that you want to migrate.
3. Specify a path and filename for the migrated macro, and then click Play.
   The macro is compiled for use with the later version of WordPerfect Office.
4. Make note of any errors that are encountered by the macro compiler, and make the necessary fixes to the macro.
   For tips on resolving macro-compilation errors, see “Troubleshooting macro-compilation errors” on page 74.

Recording PerfectScript macros

You can create a basic PerfectScript macro by using the PerfectScript utility to record keyboard actions in WordPerfect, Quattro Pro, or Presentations. Keyboard actions are actions that you perform by using the keyboard — for example, typing text or saving a file.

You cannot record mouse actions. However, you can use the keyboard to position the cursor by pressing an arrow key or a navigation shortcut key.

You cannot record some actions at all. However, you may be able to manually code such actions by using a macro editor (see “Writing and editing PerfectScript macros” on page 71).

You can also record macros from directly within WordPerfect, Quattro Pro, or Presentations. For information, please see the Help file for the application.
You can also record template macros and QuickMacros from directly within WordPerfect. For information, please see the Help file for WordPerfect.

When you record a PerfectScript macro, you record the results of your actions rather than your actual actions. For example, if you record a macro that changes the top margin of a page to 2 inches in a WordPerfect document, PerfectScript records the WordPerfect product command `MarginTop(MarginWidth:2.0")` rather than the step-by-step method that you used to change the margin. The correct PerfectScript syntax (see “Understanding macro commands” on page 37) is automatically applied to all recorded product commands; for this reason, recording a macro helps you avoid typos and similar errors that can occur when manually coding macros.

Only product commands can be recorded. If you want to include programming commands (or complex functions such as assignments or loops) in a macro, you must manually code them. For information, see “Writing and editing PerfectScript macros” on page 71.

This section contains the following procedures:

• To record a PerfectScript macro

To record a PerfectScript macro

1. Open the desired WordPerfect Office application.
2. In the PerfectScript utility, click `File ▶ Record`.
3. Type a name for the macro, and then click `Record`.
4. Switch to the WordPerfect Office application, and then perform the keyboard actions that you want to record.
   Although you cannot record mouse actions, you can use the keyboard to position the cursor by pressing an arrow key or a navigation shortcut key.
5. When you have finished recording the macro, click `File ▶ Stop` in the PerfectScript utility.

   When you record a macro, the PerfectScript utility automatically records the `Application` command for the appropriate WordPerfect Office application. This command indicates the application to which the macro belongs.

   Some actions cannot be recorded. However, you may be able to manually code these actions by using a macro editor (see “Writing and editing PerfectScript macros” on page 71).

   If you need to stop recording temporarily (for example, to locate a feature or to experiment with the effect of a feature before you record the command), click `File ▶ Pause` in the PerfectScript utility. Click `Pause` again to resume recording the macro.

   You can specify the settings to use when recording macros. For information, see “To specify settings for recording macros” on page 68.

Writing and editing PerfectScript macros

If you prefer to write (rather than record) a PerfectScript macro, you can do so by using a macro editor — or even by typing in a blank document. Manually coding a PerfectScript macro requires an understanding of both the PerfectScript language and the principles of computer programming.
A macro editor, as its name implies, lets you edit the code for an existing macro. You can edit a macro if you want to change how that macro operates.

If you choose WordPerfect as your macro editor, you can easily insert PerfectScript macro commands into your macro code by using the Command Inserter feature of the Command Browser. The Command Inserter feature lets you choose macro commands and parameters from the provided lists and then insert the resulting syntax into your macro code. Using the Command Inserter saves you time and helps you avoid typos and similar errors that can occur when manually coding macros.

If you choose WordPerfect as your macro editor, you must disable the SmartQuotes feature. To disable SmartQuotes in WordPerfect, click Tools > QuickCorrect™, click the SmartQuotes tab, and then disable the Use double quotation marks as you type check box.

If you do not choose WordPerfect as your macro editor, you must be sure to apply the correct syntax to all the macro commands that you type. For information about macro-command syntax, see “Understanding macro commands” on page 37.

This section contains the following procedures:

- To write a PerfectScript macro
- To edit a PerfectScript macro
- To insert a macro command into PerfectScript macro code

**Formatting PerfectScript macros**

If you want to improve the readability of a macro, you can format it to include tabs, spaces, and even font styles or other text-appearance changes. Formatting a macro does not affect how it works.

For example, WordPerfect records the following macro in this default format:

```plaintext
PosDocBottom()
Type("Sincerely")
HardReturn()
HardReturn()
HardReturn()
HardReturn()
Type("Ms. Sharon Openshaw")
HardReturn()
Type("Vice President, Marketing")
```

However, you can type spaces between components and blank lines between tasks, as follows:

```plaintext
PosDocBottom()

Type ("Sincerely")

HardReturn()
HardReturn()
HardReturn()
```
HardReturn()

Type ("Ms. Sharon Openshaw")

HardReturn()
Type ("Vice President, Marketing")

**To write a PerfectScript macro**

1. Type the macro code in a macro editor or in a blank document.
2. Save the macro as a file with a .wcm extension.

* You can specify the settings to use when writing macros in a macro editor (see “To specify settings for editing macros” on page 67).

**To edit a PerfectScript macro**

1. In the PerfectScript utility, click *File* ➤ *Edit*.
2. Select the macro that you want to edit, and then click *Edit*.
   - If necessary, click *Convert* to convert the macro for editing.
3. Make the desired changes to the macro, and close the macro editor.

* In Windows, you can access the *Edit* command for a macro by right-clicking that macro.
* You can specify the settings to use when editing macros (see “To specify settings for editing macros” on page 67).

**To insert a macro command into PerfectScript macro code**

1. In the macro code, click where you want to insert a macro command.
2. In the PerfectScript utility, click *Help* ➤ *Macro Command Browser*.
3. From the *Command type* list box, choose the type of command that you want to insert.
4. In the *Commands* list, double-click the command that you want to insert.
5. In the *Parameters* list, double-click the parameter that you want to insert.
   - If the parameter has enumerations, double-click the desired enumeration to insert both the parameter and its enumeration.
6. Repeat step 5 for each additional parameter.
7. Click *Return values* if you want to return value enumerations for commands that have enumerations as return values.
8. If desired, manually edit the command in the *Command edit* list box.
9. Click *Insert* to copy the command from the *Command edit* box and insert it into the macro code.

* You can use the Command Inserter feature only when using WordPerfect as your macro editor. For information about choosing a macro editor, see “To specify settings for editing macros” on page 67.
* For most macro commands, a default value is passed when an optional enumeration parameter is omitted — and in some cases, omitting an optional enumeration parameter performs a different
function altogether. In the Command Browser, any default enumeration values for a parameter are displayed in bold text in the Parameters list.

For some macro commands, the default parameter value is a combination of enumerations. In this scenario, several enumerations may be defined as synonyms that have the same value; in the Command Browser, any such enumerations are highlighted.

You can display Help for any macro command in the Command Browser by right-clicking that command in the Commands list.

**Compiling PerfectScript macros**

To create a functioning macro from macro code, you must use a “compiler.” PerfectScript macros are automatically compiled when they are recorded or played, but they can be manually compiled at any time by using the PerfectScript utility.

You can also compile macros from directly within WordPerfect or Presentations. For information, please see the Help file for the application.

This section contains the following procedures:
• To compile a PerfectScript macro

**Understanding compilers**

In machine (computer) language, every word is a binary numeral that consists of zeros and ones. Consider the following examples:
• In binary notation, the first three letters of the alphabet are 1000001, 1000010, and 1000011.
• The binary result of 4 + 5 is 1001.

Working with binary numerals can be awkward, so English-based programming languages (such as Basic, Pascal, and C) were designed to simplify the process of writing programs. A programming language is used to write program code in an editor or word processor, and that program code is then saved as a source file. However, computers can execute only object files, not source files. For this reason, a program compiler is required to create an object file by making a copy of the source file and translating that copy into machine language.

Macro languages are similar to programming languages. A macro language (such as PerfectScript) is used to write macro code in an editor or word processor, and that macro code is then saved as a source file. However, rather than create a separate object file from the source file, a macro compiler creates an object and saves it in a hidden area of the source file. This hidden object is destroyed when the source file is edited and regenerated when the source file is recompiled.

A macro is therefore a compiled source file that contains instructions that are executed when that macro is played. The PerfectScript macro compiler is used to compile or “translate” PerfectScript macro code into a usable format for WordPerfect Office applications.

**Troubleshooting macro-compilation errors**

The PerfectScript macro compiler is useful for troubleshooting problems with your PerfectScript macros. When the compiler locates an error, it displays a dialog box that contains general information about the problem. However, the compiler can make only a best guess as to what a macro is intended to accomplish; as a result, the compiler may direct you to a problem rather than specifically identify that problem.
If you receive an error message while compiling a macro, you can continue the macro-compilation process if you want to check for additional errors, or you can cancel the macro-compilation process altogether. In either case, the macro cannot be played until you correct all errors and successfully compile the macro.

The following syntax errors can cause a macro-compilation error:

- A command name is misspelled
- A semicolon is missing between macro-command parameters
- A comma, instead of a semicolon, is used between macro-command parameters
- A parenthesis is missing
- A (double) quotation mark is missing
- A (double) quotation mark is inserted by using the SmartQuotes feature in WordPerfect
- A macro command is missing from a conditional statement
- A macro command is missing from a loop statement
- A calling statement is undefined

In addition, the following conditions can cause a macro-compilation error:

- No “return” statement is found in the body of a user-defined function. In this case, a `return (0)` statement is generated.
- A “return” statement with no return value is found in the body of a user-defined function. In this case, a value of 0 is returned.
- The macro appears to be empty when compiled. This issue can occur when a previously compiled macro has its source removed; compiling such a macro destroys the existing (compiled) macro object.
- An obsolete or unsupported feature is found in a macro during compilation. These warnings can be safely ignored to produce a successful macro — they serve as reminders only. Warnings are displayed when an old EN English synonym is used in the `Application` statement (US, UK, CE, OZ), or when an obsolete or unsupported command, enumeration, or parameter is used.

When correcting macro-compilation errors, work through the macro code from beginning to end, and focus on the errors for which the solution seems most apparent. Leave the errors with less apparent solutions until later — some of these errors may be corrected by resolving the more obvious errors.

**To compile a PerfectScript macro**

1. In the PerfectScript utility, click **File ➤ Compile**.
2. Select the macro that you want to compile, and then click **Compile**.

**You can also**

- **Cancel the compilation of a macro**: In the **Compile progress** dialog box, do one of the following:
  - Click the **Cancel** button.
  - Press **Enter**.

If you want to compile a legacy macro or a non-PerfectScript macro, you must first convert it to the current PerfectScript format. For information, see “Migrating legacy PerfectScript macros” on page 69.

When a macro is compiled, warnings are displayed for any labels or routines that are not defined by that macro. However, the compiled macro will function correctly if it calls another macro that defines those labels and routines.
In Windows, you can access the Compile command for a macro by right-clicking that macro. You can specify the settings to use when compiling macros. For information, see “To specify settings for compiling macros” on page 67.

Playing PerfectScript macros

You can perform the operations that are specified in a PerfectScript macro by using the PerfectScript utility to play that macro.

When you play a PerfectScript macro, the PerfectScript utility determines which application is associated with that macro. The PerfectScript utility then checks the registry for the path to the EXE file for the application. If that path is not in the registry, you are prompted to specify the location of that EXE file.

You can also play macros from directly within WordPerfect, Quattro Pro, or Presentations. For information, please see the Help file for the application.

You can also play template macros and QuickMacros from directly within WordPerfect. For information, please see the Help file for WordPerfect.

This section contains the following procedures:

• To play a PerfectScript macro

Troubleshooting macro run-time errors

A run-time error is a problem that occurs while a macro is playing.

When a run-time error is encountered, an error message displays the location of the problem in the macro code. For this reason, the best way to troubleshoot a run-time error is to consult its error message.

To play a PerfectScript macro

1 In the PerfectScript utility, click File > Play.
2 Select the macro that you want to play, and then click Play.

You can also

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pause (or resume) a macro</th>
<th>In the PerfectScript utility, click File &gt; Pause.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Stop a macro</td>
<td>In the PerfectScript utility, click File &gt; Stop.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Every time a macro is played, it is recompiled and then saved. If you do not want to save over a macro when you play it, you can create a new version of it by specifying a different path or filename in the Play macro dialog box.

In Windows, you can access the commands for playing, pausing, and stopping a macro by right-clicking that macro.

You can specify the settings to use when playing macros. For information, see “To specify settings for playing macros” on page 67.
Making PerfectScript macros user-friendly

From directly within WordPerfect, Quattro Pro, or Presentations, you can assign a macro to a keystroke, menu, toolbar, or property bar. For information, see the Help file for the application.

If you want to make a macro even more user-friendly, you can create a dialog box for it by using the Dialog Editor feature of the PerfectScript utility. For information, see “Creating UI for PerfectScript macros” on page 79.
Creating UI for PerfectScript macros

You can create dialog boxes for your PerfectScript macros if you want to provide an interface between the application and the user (commonly called a “user interface,” or “UI”).

This section contains the following topics:
• “Understanding dialog boxes for PerfectScript macros” on page 79
• “Setting up dialog boxes for PerfectScript macros” on page 80
• “Setting up controls for PerfectScript dialog boxes” on page 84
• “Setting up callbacks for PerfectScript dialog boxes” on page 96
• “Testing PerfectScript dialog boxes” on page 101
• “Displaying PerfectScript dialog boxes” on page 101

Understanding dialog boxes for PerfectScript macros

Dialog boxes provide an interface between the application and the user.

Dialog boxes come in two types:
• modal — A modal dialog box locks the application until the user acts on that dialog box and closes it. The File | Open dialog box in WordPerfect is an example of a modal dialog box because focus remains on this dialog box until it is released.
• modeless — A modeless dialog box does not lock the application, so the user can move between the dialog box and the application as necessary. The Find and Replace dialog box in WordPerfect is an example of a modeless dialog box because you can continue working in a document while this dialog box is displayed.

Of the two dialog-box types, modal is the more common.

To use a modeless dialog box in your macro, you must enable the Display property and disable the InhibitInput property.

As a macro programmer, you can take advantage of dialog boxes in PerfectScript if you want to obtain information or data from a user. Dialog boxes that are created in a macro can be used to ask questions or otherwise gather data — data that, in turn, can be used to determine the flow and control of the macro.

You can create a dialog box in one of two ways:
• by writing PerfectScript code — The PerfectScript language provides programming commands for manually coding dialog boxes.
• by using the PerfectScript Dialog Editor — The PerfectScript Dialog Editor provides a graphical development environment for designing dialog boxes quickly and easily.

The Dialog Editor does not let you edit macros, only to define dialog boxes for them.

The Dialog Editor works only with macros that are in WordPerfect format. For this reason, you can open the Dialog Editor either from within the PerfectScript utility or from within WordPerfect, as explained in “To display the Dialog Editor” on page 66.

The first step in creating a dialog box is explained in “Setting up dialog boxes for PerfectScript macros” on page 80.
Setting up dialog boxes for PerfectScript macros

You can set up a dialog box for a macro, either by writing PerfectScript code or by using the PerfectScript Dialog Editor.

**Setting up dialog boxes by using PerfectScript code**

You can use the PerfectScript programming command `DialogDefine` to set up a dialog box.

The following code provides an example of a dialog box that is set up by using the `DialogDefine` command.

```perfectscript
dialogdefine (dialog: "MainDialog"; left: 50; top: 50; width: 150; height: 100; style: ok! | percent!; caption: "Example Dialog Box")
```

Remember that because parameter names are optional, the following command is equivalent to the preceding one:

```perfectscript
dialogdefine (1000; 50; 50; 200; 125; ok! | percent!; "Example Dialog Box")
```

You can use `+` or `|` in parameters where multiple values can be specified. In the preceding example, the syntax `OK! | Percent!` applies both the `OK!` enumeration and the `Percent!` enumeration to the `Style` parameter.

The following table describes the purpose of each parameter in the preceding example.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter (or parameters)</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Dialog</td>
<td>Specifies the name of the dialog box, which is used to refer to the dialog box throughout the macro code. This name can consist of letters or numbers (or both), and it must be unique. In the preceding example, the name <code>MainDialog</code> is assigned to the dialog box.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Left and Top</td>
<td>Work together to specify the position of the top-left corner of the dialog box. Dialog boxes are positioned in dialog-box units, whereby a vertical unit equals 1/8 the font height and a horizontal unit equals 1/4 the font width. In the preceding example, the <code>Left</code> and <code>Top</code> parameters are assigned a value of 50 and are used with the <code>Percent!</code> enumeration of the <code>Style</code> parameter. As a result, the dialog box is centered on the screen.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Creating UI for PerfectScript macros

For more information about the DialogDefine command, please see the DialogDefine topic in the PerfectScript Command Reference section of the Macro Help (psh.chm).

Setting up dialog boxes by using the Dialog Editor

You can use the Dialog Editor to add a dialog box to a macro. For information, see “To add a dialog box to a PerfectScript macro by using the Dialog Editor” on page 81.

You can also use the Dialog Editor to set the properties for a dialog box. You can use properties to specify the location and size of a dialog box, as well as its caption, Help file, Help key, type (modal or modeless), frame type, and attributes. For more information, see “To set the properties for a dialog box by using the Dialog Editor” on page 83.

You can use the Dialog Editor to choose the typeface and point size for the text in a dialog box. Changes in font size and style affect the size of the dialog box. For more information, see “To set the font for a dialog box by using the Dialog Editor” on page 83.

Finally, you can use the Dialog Editor to save a dialog box in the current macro. For information, see “To save a dialog box in the current macro by using the Dialog Editor” on page 84.

To add a dialog box to a PerfectScript macro by using the Dialog Editor

1. In the PerfectScript utility, click Tools ➔ Dialog Editor. The Edit Macro Dialogs dialog box appears.
2. Select the desired macro, and then click OK. The Dialog Editor for that macro appears.
3. Click File ➔ New, and then type a name for the new dialog box.
4. Set the properties for the dialog box. For information, see “To set the properties for a dialog box by using the Dialog Editor” on page 83.
5. Select the dialog box, and then click File ➔ Open.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter (or parameters)</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Width and Height</strong></td>
<td>Work together to determine the size of the dialog box. Dialog boxes are sized in dialog-box units, whereby a vertical unit equals 1/8 the font height and a horizontal unit equals 1/4 the font width. In the preceding example, the Width and Height parameters are assigned values of 150 and 100 (respectively).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Style</strong></td>
<td>Specifies one or more dialog-box styles. These styles are used to determine the appearance and function of the dialog box. In the preceding example, the Style parameter is assigned the enumerations OK! and Percent!. The OK! enumeration adds an OK button to the dialog box. The Percent! enumeration sets the Left and Top parameters to use the percentage of the screen width or height minus the width or height of the dialog box.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Caption</strong></td>
<td>Specifies the text to be displayed in the caption (title) bar. In the preceding example, the text &quot;Example Dialog Box&quot; is assigned to the caption bar.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The dialog box is opened for editing in the Dialog Editor.

6 Do any of the following:
   • Set the font for the dialog box. For information, see “To set the font for a dialog box by using the Dialog Editor” on page 83.
   • Add controls to the dialog box. For information, see “Setting up controls for PerfectScript dialog boxes” on page 84.

7 Click File ➤ Save, and then click File ➤ Close. For more information, see “To save a dialog box in the current macro by using the Dialog Editor” on page 84.

8 Test the dialog box. For information, see “Testing PerfectScript dialog boxes” on page 101.

9 Write macro code for opening and closing the dialog box. For information, see “Displaying PerfectScript dialog boxes” on page 101.

Dialog-box names are case-sensitive. Be sure to correctly reference them in your macros. When you save a dialog box, its size and position are recorded. When you open a saved dialog box, its size and position are loaded, applied, and maintained during the current session of PerfectScript.

You can also

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Copy a dialog box by using the Dialog Editor</th>
<th>In the PerfectScript utility, click Tools ➤ Dialog Editor. Select the macro that contains the dialog box, and then click OK. Click Edit ➤ Copy. Open the macro file to which you want to copy the dialog box, and then click Edit ➤ Paste. Rename the pasted dialog box, if desired.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Edit a dialog box by using the Dialog Editor</td>
<td>In the PerfectScript utility, click Tools ➤ Dialog Editor. Select the macro that contains the dialog box, and then click OK. Double-click the dialog box that you want to edit, and then edit the dialog box as desired. Click Edit ➤ Save to save the edited dialog box in the current macro file.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rename a dialog box by using the Dialog Editor</td>
<td>In the PerfectScript utility, click Tools ➤ Dialog Editor. Select the macro that contains the dialog box, and then click OK. Select the dialog box, and then click File ➤ Rename. Type a new name for the dialog box.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

NOTES:

• Dialog-box names are case-sensitive. Be sure to correctly reference them in your macros.
• Renaming a dialog box gives it a new name in the current macro file, but it does not change the name that is displayed on the caption bar.
• Remember to update the macro code with new name of the dialog box.
To set the properties for a dialog box by using the Dialog Editor

1. In the PerfectScript utility, click **Tools ➤ Dialog Editor**.
2. Select the macro that contains the dialog box, and then click **OK**.
3. Select the dialog box, and then click **File ➤ Properties**.
4. In the **Dialog Properties** dialog box that appears, specify any of the following properties for the dialog box:
   - location and size
   - caption
   - Help file
   - Help key
   - dialog-box type
   - frame type
   - attributes

You can choose between two dialog-box types: modal and modeless. A modal dialog box locks the macro until the user acts on that dialog box and closes it. A modeless dialog box does not lock the macro, so the user can move between the dialog box and the macro as necessary.

To set the font for a dialog box by using the Dialog Editor

1. In the PerfectScript utility, click **Tools ➤ Dialog Editor**.
2. Select the macro that contains the dialog box, and then click **OK**.
3. Select the dialog box, and then click **File ➤ Open**.
4. Click **Dialog ➤ Font**.
5. In the **Dialog Font** dialog box that appears, specify any of the following font attributes:
   - style
   - size

   The font size that you choose affects the size of the dialog box — the larger the font, the larger the dialog box.
   
   The caption font remains constant for all dialog boxes.
To save a dialog box in the current macro by using the Dialog Editor

1. With the dialog box open for editing in the Dialog Editor, click **File ▶ Save** to save the dialog box in the current macro file.

2. Click **File ▶ Close** to stop editing the dialog box and close its Dialog Editor.

Setting up controls for PerfectScript dialog boxes

You can set up controls for a dialog box, either by writing PerfectScript code or by using the PerfectScript Dialog Editor. Controls are input or output windows where the user interacts with a dialog box and its parent application. You can use any of the following control types in your dialog boxes:

- **bitmap** — see “Bitmap controls” on page 85
- **button** — see “Button controls” on page 86
- **check box** — see “Check box controls” on page 86
- **color wheel** — see “Color wheel controls” on page 87
- **combo box** — see “Combination ("combo") box controls” on page 87
- **counter** — see “Counter controls” on page 87
- **custom control** — see “Custom controls” on page 88
- **date control** — see “Date controls” on page 88
- **edit box** — see “Edit box controls” on page 88
- **filename box** — see “Filename box controls” on page 89
- **frame** — see “Frame controls” on page 89
- **group box** — see “Group box controls” on page 89
- **line** — see “Line controls” on page 90
- **list control** — see “List controls” on page 90
- **progress indicator** — see “Progress indicator controls” on page 91
- **scroll bar** — see “Scroll bar controls” on page 91
- **static text** — see “Static text controls” on page 91
- **viewer** — see “Viewer controls” on page 91

You can add controls to a dialog box by writing macro code. The PerfectScript language provides a programming command for creating each control type — simply insert these commands after the **DialogDefine** command (see “Setting up dialog boxes by using PerfectScript code” on page 80) for the dialog box.

In the following example, the PerfectScript programming command **DialogAddText** is used to add a static-text control (named **Control1**) to the dialog box named **MainDialog** by using the specified parameters:

```perfectscript
DialogAddText (Dialog: "MainDialog"; Control: "Control1"; _
    Left: 10; Top: 10; Width: 50; Height: 9; Style: Left!; _
    Text: "Edit control:")
```

In the following example, the PerfectScript programming command **DialogAddEditBox** is used to add an edit-box control (named **Control2**) to the dialog box named **MainDialog** by using the specified parameters:

```perfectscript
DialogAddEditBox (Dialog: "MainDialog"; Control: "Control2"; _
    Left: 10; Top: 25; Width: 125; Height: 25; Style: Left! | _
```
For information about the PerfectScript programming commands for creating dialog-box controls, please see the PerfectScript Command Reference section of the Macro Help (psh.chm).

Alternatively, you can use the Dialog Editor to set up controls in any of the following ways:

- by adding controls to a dialog box. For information, see “To add a control to a PerfectScript dialog box by using the Dialog Editor” on page 92.
- by setting the properties for the controls in a dialog box. The properties that are available to a control depend on the control type. For information, see “To set the properties for a control by using the Dialog Editor” on page 93.
- by positioning the controls in a dialog box, either at specified locations or in relation to each other. For information, see “To position one or more controls by using the Dialog Editor” on page 94.
- by assigning behaviors to the controls in a dialog box. For information, see “To assign behaviors to one or more controls by using the Dialog Editor” on page 95.

Some controls require the use of a hot spot — an invisible control that closes the dialog box when the user clicks the defined area. (The response for a hot spot can be redefined with a callback function.) The PerfectScript command for creating a hot spot is DialogAddHotSpot. For information about this command, please see the PerfectScript Command Reference section of the Macro Help (psh.chm).

The PerfectScript language lets you create one type of control that is not supported by the Dialog Editor: an icon control, which is represented by the programming command DialogAddIcon. An icon control does not accept input, unless it is used in a callback function with the PerfectScript command DialogAddHotSpot. For information about these commands, please see the PerfectScript Command Reference section of the Macro Help (psh.chm).

Variables that are associated with controls work the same way with dialog boxes that are created by using PerfectScript code as they do with dialog boxes that are created by using the Dialog Editor. If a variable exists, its value is set into the controls when the dialog box is opened, and the value in the controls is set into the variables when the dialog box is closed. For more information about using PerfectScript code to open and close dialog boxes, see “Displaying PerfectScript dialog boxes” on page 101.

### Bitmap controls

You can display a bitmap as a control. By default, the bitmap appears without a border on the background of the dialog box; however, for visual clarity, you can give the bitmap an outline. A bitmap control looks like this:

![Bitmap control example](example.png)

The PerfectScript command for creating a bitmap control is DialogAddBitmap. For information about this command, please see the DialogAddBitmap topic in the PerfectScript Command Reference section of the Macro Help (psh.chm).

A bitmap control does not accept input, unless it is used in a callback function with the PerfectScript command DialogAddHotSpot. For information about this command, please see the DialogAddHotSpot topic in the PerfectScript Command Reference section of the Macro Help (psh.chm).
**Button controls**

You can add three kinds of buttons to a dialog box: pop-up buttons, push buttons, and radio buttons.

A pop-up button displays a list of options when clicked. The button itself shows the selected option.

A pop-up button looks like this when it is closed:

![Closed pop-up button]

A pop-up button looks like this when it is clicked:

![Clicked pop-up button]

A push button activates a specific action — such as **OK**, **Cancel**, or **Help** — when clicked. A push button looks like this:

![Push button]

Radio buttons are used in groups to represent options that are mutually exclusive. Enabling one radio button disables another. A radio button looks like this:

![Radio button]

The PerfectScript command for creating a push-button control is `DialogAddPushButton`, and the command for creating a radio-button control is `DialogAddRadioButton`. For information about these commands, please see the `DialogAddPushButton` and `DialogAddRadioButton` topics in the PerfectScript Command Reference section of the Macro Help (*psh.chm*).

A radio-button control uses a callback function to activate user-defined responses.

**Check box controls**

Check boxes are used in groups to represent options that are compatible. Clicking an empty check box enables that option, while clicking a marked check box disables that option. A check box looks like this:

![Check box]

The PerfectScript command for creating a check-box control is `DialogAddCheckBox`. For information about this command, please see the `DialogAddCheckBox` topic in the PerfectScript Command Reference section of the Macro Help (*psh.chm*).

A check-box control uses a callback function to activate user-defined responses.

You can define a check box as “Three State” if you want it to provide a state of unavailability (that is, a state in which the box is checked and grayed) in addition to an enabled state and a disabled state.
**Color wheel controls**

A color wheel lets the user select a color based on values of hue, lightness, and saturation. A color wheel looks like this:

![Color wheel](image)

The PerfectScript command for creating a color-wheel control is `DialogAddColorWheel`. For information about this command, please see the `DialogAddColorWheel` topic in the PerfectScript Command Reference section of the Macro Help (`psh.chm`).

In a color-wheel control, you can use the arrow keys to move the color selection. Hold down Ctrl while using the arrow keys to change the value of the color-saturation bar.

**Combination (“combo”) box controls**

A combo box combines an edit box (see “Edit box controls” on page 88) with a list box (see “List controls” on page 90). You can enter text in the edit box, or you can double-click a list item to insert it.

A combo box looks like this when it is closed:

![Combo box closed](image)

A combo box looks like this when it is clicked:

![Combo box clicked](image)

The PerfectScript command for creating a combo-box control is `DialogAddComboBox`. For information about this command, please see the `DialogAddComboBox` topic in the PerfectScript Command Reference section of the Macro Help (`psh.chm`).

**Counter controls**

A counter lets the user enter numeric data in an edit box (see “Edit box controls” on page 88), either by typing in the edit box or by clicking the built-in incrementor/decrementor control. A counter looks like this:

![Counter](image)

The PerfectScript command for creating a counter control is `DialogAddCounter`. For information about this command, please see the `DialogAddCounter` topic in the PerfectScript Command Reference section of the Macro Help (`psh.chm`).
**Custom controls**

A custom control lets you, the macro programmer, create a control by specifying its settings for text, class, and attributes. A custom control looks like this:

![Custom control example]

The PerfectScript command for creating a custom control is **DialogAddControl**. For information about this command, please see the DialogAddControl topic in the PerfectScript Command Reference section of the Macro Help (psh.chm).

**Date controls**

A date control displays an edit box (see “Edit box controls” on page 88) and a calendar icon. The user can enter a date by typing in the edit box or by clicking the calendar icon and choosing a date from the calendar that appears. A date control looks like this when the calendar icon is clicked:

![Date control example]

The PerfectScript command for creating a date control is **DialogAddDate**. For information about this command, please see the DialogAddDate topic in the PerfectScript Command Reference section of the Macro Help (psh.chm).

In a date control, you can use the following keyboard shortcuts to change the date more quickly:

- Holding **Ctrl** while clicking an arrow icon — increases the tens column
- Holding **Alt** while clicking an arrow icon — increases the hundreds column
- Pressing **Alt** + arrow key — changes the month by one month
- Pressing **Page Up** or **Page Down** — changes the year
- Pressing **Alt** — changes the year by one year
- Pressing **Alt** + **Ctrl** — changes the year by 10 years
- Pressing **Alt** + **Shift** — changes the year by 100 years

**Edit box controls**

An edit box lets the user type text, or it lets the macro type text on the user's behalf. An edit box can have one or more lines. An edit box looks like this:

![Edit box example]
The PerfectScript command for creating an edit-box control is \texttt{DialogAddEditBox}. For information about this command, please see the DialogAddEditBox topic in the PerfectScript Command Reference section of the Macro Help (\texttt{psh.chm}).

**Filename box controls**

A filename box displays an edit box (see “Edit box controls” on page 88) and a folder button. The user can specify a file either by typing the filename (and its path) or by clicking the folder button to display a \texttt{Browse} dialog box. A filename box looks like this:

The PerfectScript command for creating a filename-box control is \texttt{DialogAddFileNameBox}. For information about this command, please see the DialogAddFileNameBox topic in the PerfectScript Command Reference section of the Macro Help (\texttt{psh.chm}).

**Frame controls**

A frame can be used to visually group the items in a dialog box, or to act as a design element. A frame looks like this:

The PerfectScript command for creating a frame control is \texttt{DialogAddFrame}. For information about this command, please see the DialogAddFrame topic in the PerfectScript Command Reference section of the Macro Help (\texttt{psh.chm}).

A frame control does not accept input.

**Group box controls**

A group box visually groups controls by using a titled frame. A group box looks like this:

The PerfectScript command for creating a group box control is \texttt{DialogAddGroupBox}. For information about this command, please see the DialogAddGroupBox topic in the PerfectScript Command Reference section of the Macro Help (\texttt{psh.chm}).

A group box control does not accept input.
A group box can group controls visually, but not functionally. To make the controls in a group box function as a group, you can use the Control Order and Control Groups features in the Dialog Editor, as explained in “To assign behaviors to one or more controls by using the Dialog Editor” on page 95.

**Line controls**

You can use a horizontal line or a vertical line to visually separate the items in a dialog box.

A horizontal line looks like this:

A vertical line looks like this:

The PerfectScript command for creating a horizontal line control is DialogAddHLine, while the command for creating a vertical line control is DialogAddVLine. For information about these commands, please see the DialogAddHLine and DialogAddVLine topics in the PerfectScript Command Reference section of the Macro Help (psh.chm).

A line control does not accept input.

**List controls**

A list control displays a series of options (or “list items”) from which to choose. A list control takes one of the following forms:

- a pop-up list — presents the list items in a pop-up window
- a drop-down list — presents the list items in a window that extends outward from the list control
- a list box — presents the list items in a window that acts much like a viewer (see “Viewer controls” on page 91)

A list box looks like this:

The PerfectScript command for creating a list box control is DialogAddListBox, while the command for creating a list item is DialogAddListItem. For information about these commands, please see the DialogAddListBox and DialogAddListItem topics in the PerfectScript Command Reference section of the Macro Help (psh.chm).
**Progress indicator controls**

A progress indicator displays the progress of a process as it runs. A progress indicator looks like this:

![Progress Indicator](image)

The PerfectScript command for creating a progress indicator control is `DialogAddProgress`. For information about this command, please see the `DialogAddProgress` topic in the PerfectScript Command Reference section of the Macro Help (`psh.chm`).

**Scroll bar controls**

A scroll bar lets the user scroll the viewable area. A horizontal scroll bar moves the viewable area left and right, while a vertical scroll bar moves the viewable area up and down.

A horizontal scroll bar looks like this:

![Horizontal Scroll Bar](image)

A vertical scroll bar looks like this:

![Vertical Scroll Bar](image)

The PerfectScript command for creating a scroll bar control is `DialogAddScrollBar`. For information about this command, please see the `DialogAddScrollBar` topic in the PerfectScript Command Reference section of the Macro Help (`psh.chm`).

A scroll bar control can use a callback function to activate user-defined responses.

**Static text controls**

Static text provides the user with one or more lines of read-only information, such as instructions. Static text looks like this:

![Static Text](image)

The PerfectScript command for creating a static text control is `DialogAddText`. For information about this command, please see the `DialogAddText` topic in the PerfectScript Command Reference section of the Macro Help (`psh.chm`).

A static text control does not accept input.

You can copy static text from most dialog boxes that are part of a macro system. However, you cannot copy static text from user-defined dialog boxes.

**Viewer controls**

A viewer displays a read-only, scrollable text file. A viewer looks like this:

![Viewer](image)
The PerfectScript command for creating a viewer control is `DialogAddViewer`. For information about this command, please see the `DialogAddViewer` topic in the PerfectScript Command Reference section of the Macro Help (`psh.chm`).

**To add a control to a PerfectScript dialog box by using the Dialog Editor**

1. In the PerfectScript utility, click **Tools > Dialog Editor**.
2. Select the macro that contains the dialog box, and then click **OK**. The Dialog Editor for that macro appears.
3. Select the dialog box, and then click **File > Open**. The dialog box is opened for editing in the Dialog Editor.
4. Add the desired type of control by clicking its corresponding command on the Control menu (or by clicking its corresponding toolbar icon):
   - `bitmap` — **Control > Bitmap**
   - `button, push` — **Control > Buttons > Push**
   - `button, radio` — **Control > Buttons > Radio**
   - `check box` — **Control > Check Box**
   - `color wheel` — **Control > Color Wheel**
   - `combo box` — **Control > Combo Box**
   - `counter` — **Control > Counter**
   - `custom control` — **Control > Custom**
   - `date control` — **Control > Date**
   - `edit box` — **Control > Edit Box**
   - `filename box` — **Control > Filename Box**
   - `frame` — **Control > Frame**
   - `group box` — **Control > Group Box**
   - `line, horizontal` — **Control > Lines > Horizontal**
   - `line, vertical` — **Control > Lines > Vertical**
   - `list control` — **Control > List Box**
   - `progress indicator` — **Control > Progress Indicator**
   - `scroll bar, horizontal` — **Control > Scroll Bars > Horizontal**
   - `scroll bar, vertical` — **Control > Scroll Bars > Vertical**
   - `static text` — **Control > Static Text**
   - `viewer` — **Control > Viewer**
5. Position the pointer where you want the top-left corner of the control to appear, and then click.

**You can also**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Select a control in the Dialog Editor</th>
<th><strong>Click the control.</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Select multiple controls in the Dialog Editor</td>
<td><strong>Hold down Shift, and click the controls. The last control that you click is called the “anchor control,” and it appears with black squares around it</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
To set the properties for a control by using the Dialog Editor

1 With the dialog box open for editing in the Dialog Editor, display the properties for the control by doing one of the following:
   - Double-click the control.
   - Right-click the control, and then click Properties.
   The Properties dialog box for the control appears.

2 Set the properties for the control. The properties that are available to a control depend on the control type, as follows:
   - bitmap — location and size; named region; variable; filename; attributes
   - button, push — location and size; named region; text; type
   - button, radio — location and size; named region; variable; text; type; text placement; initial state
   - check box — location and size; named region; variable; text; type; text placement; initial state
   - color wheel — location and size; named region; variable; initial color values
   - combo box — location and size; named region; variable; style; current item list; type; attributes
   - counter — location and size; named region; variable; values; attributes
   - custom control — location and size; named region; text; class; styles
   - date control — location and size; named region; variable; initial date; attributes
   - edit box — location and size; named region; variable; style; text; type; justification; capitalization; attributes; automatic scroll; scroll bar
   - filename box — location and size; named region; variable; folder; template; type
   - frame — location and size; named region; type; color
   - group box — location and size; named region; text

To position one or more controls by using the Dialog Editor

You can also

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Action</th>
<th>Instructions</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Move a control in the Dialog Editor | Drag the control.  
   **TIP:** For information about precisely positioning a control, see “To position one or more controls by using the Dialog Editor” on page 94. |
| Resize a control in the Dialog Editor | Drag one of the handles for the control. |
| Copy a control in the Dialog Editor | Right-click the control, and then click Copy. Drag the copy to position it.  
   **NOTE:** The copy has all the properties of the original control, but you can change them if desired.  
   **TIP:** You can also copy a control by holding down Ctrl while selecting it. |
| Edit a control in the Dialog Editor | Double-click the control, and then set its properties. For information, see “To set the properties for a control by using the Dialog Editor” on page 93. |
| Delete a control in the Dialog Editor | Do one of the following:  
   - Right-click the control, and then click Delete.  
   - Select the control, and then press Delete. |
• line, horizontal — location and size; named region
• line, vertical — location and size; named region
• list control — location and size; named region; variable; style; current item list; attributes
• progress indicator — location and size; named region
• scroll bar, horizontal — location and size; named region; variable; values; alignment and sizing
• scroll bar, vertical — location and size; named region; variable; values; alignment and sizing
• static text — location and size; named region; variable; style; text; justification; prefix; type
• viewer — location and size; named region; variable; filename

A control name is specified by the Named region property. Control names are case-sensitive, so be sure to correctly reference them in your macros.

You can use the Properties dialog box to determine a precise location and a precise size for a control. However, you can roughly position a control by dragging it around the dialog box, and you can roughly size it by dragging one of its handles. For more information about positioning controls, see “To position one or more controls by using the Dialog Editor” on page 94.

**You can also**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Create or edit the item list for a combo box or a list control</th>
<th>In the Properties dialog box for the control, click Create/Edit List, and then do any of the following:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• add an item — Type the name of the item in the List item box, and then click Add. The item is added to the list, in the List box.</td>
<td>• select an item in the List box— Click the item.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• select an item in the List box— Click the item.</td>
<td>• edit an item — Select the item, type a new value in the List item box, and then click Replace.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• edit an item — Select the item, type a new value in the List item box, and then click Replace.</td>
<td>• move an item up the list — Select the item, and then click Move Up until the item reaches the desired position.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• move an item up the list — Select the item, and then click Move Up until the item reaches the desired position.</td>
<td>• move an item down the list — Select the item, and then click Move Down until the item reaches the desired position.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• move an item down the list — Select the item, and then click Move Down until the item reaches the desired position.</td>
<td>• set the default list item — Select the item, and then click Set Initial. The item appears in the Initial line.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• set the default list item — Select the item, and then click Set Initial. The item appears in the Initial line.</td>
<td>• delete an item — Select the item, and then click Delete.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• delete an item — Select the item, and then click Delete.</td>
<td>• sort the list alphabetically — Enable the Sort List check box. NOTE: Enabling this check box prevents you from manually rearranging the list items.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**To position one or more controls by using the Dialog Editor**

• With the dialog box open for editing in the Dialog Editor, position one or more controls by using any of the methods in the following table.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>To</th>
<th>Do the following</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Position a single control roughly</td>
<td>Drag the control to the desired position in the dialog box.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>TIP: You can roughly size the control by dragging one of its handles.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
To assign behaviors to one or more controls by using the Dialog Editor

- With the dialog box open for editing in the Dialog Editor, assign behaviors to one or more controls by using any of the methods in the following table.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>To</th>
<th>Do the following</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Position a single control precisely</td>
<td>Double-click the control to open its Properties dialog box. In the Location and size area, determine the position of the top-left corner of the control by specifying values in the Left and Top boxes. TIP: You can precisely size the control by specifying values in the Width and Height boxes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Position multiple controls roughly</td>
<td>Select the controls, and then drag them to the desired position in the dialog box.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Position multiple controls in relation to each other | Select the controls, and then position them in any of the following ways:  
  - aligned with one side of the anchor control — Click Align, and then click Left, Right, Top, or Bottom.  
  - centered in relation to the anchor control — click Align ▶ Center, and then click Vertical or Horizontal.  
  - spaced in relation to each other — click Align ▶ Space Evenly, and then click Vertical or Horizontal.  
  TIP: You can make the selected controls the same size as the anchor control by clicking Align ▶ Make Same Size and then clicking Height, Width, or Both. |

**You can also**

- Use a grid to position controls  
  Display the grid by clicking View ▶ Show Grid, and click View ▶ Snap to Grid to force controls to align with the points on that grid.  
  TIP: If you want to specify the amount of space between grid points on each axis, click View ▶ Grid Options.

---

Creating UI for PerfectScript macros 95
Setting up callbacks for PerfectScript dialog boxes

As previously discussed (see “Understanding PerfectScript callbacks” on page 58), you can create callbacks for dialog boxes. Using a dialog-box callback lets the macro gather information from an active dialog box, rather than waiting until the dialog box is closed to gather that information. For example, you can use a dialog-box callback to return the value of a control without having to close the dialog box, or to refresh the contents of a control without having to destroy and reopen the dialog box.

Creating dialog-box callbacks

There are two requirements for creating a dialog-box callback.

The first requirement for creating a callback is to specify the name of the label to which to send callback messages. This label name is specified in the third parameter of the DialogShow command. If you need to watch for certain events, you must create statements for those events inside this label. At the end of the routine, a mandatory Return command ensures that the callback loop functions properly.

The name in the label parameter of the DialogShow command may refer to either a label or a procedure. This parameter creates an implicit array of eleven elements, which has the same name as that label or procedure. The messages that are sent to the callback are accessed through these array elements.

The actual Label...Return structure can be placed anywhere in your macro. It is better, however, to create a section in your macro just for labels, functions, and procedures.

The second requirement for creating a callback is to create a callback-message loop, which is necessary for trapping dialog-box events. The loop holds control of the macro until the loop is terminated. You can create a callback-message loop either by using the CallBackWait command or by using a While loop.

The following code segment shows a skeleton callback function:

```
DialogShow(1000; "WordPerfect"; Msgs)
CallbackWait
   // This command initializes the loop.
Quit
Label(Msgs)
   // This label identifies where dialog box events are watched.
```

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>To</th>
<th>Do the following</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Specify the controls that you want the user to be able to tab through</td>
<td>Click Dialog ➤ Tab Stops. In your dialog box, click the desired controls. Click OK in the Tab Stops dialog box to apply your changes, and then click Dialog ➤ Control Order. In your dialog box, click the controls in the desired order. Click OK in the Control Order dialog box to apply your changes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Specify the default button for a control, which is activated when the user presses Enter on that control</td>
<td>Click Dialog ➤ Default Button. In your dialog box, click the desired control, and then click the button that you want as the default for that control. Click OK in the Default Button dialog box to apply your changes.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
... statements ...

Return

When a dialog box is displayed and active, messages from events in the dialog box are sent to the callback label. You can activate a callback loop in several ways, such as the following:

- pressing Alt + F4
- double-clicking the system-menu box
- clicking a button, radio-button, check-box, hot-spot, or scroll-bar control

Understanding callback loops

The following three examples illustrate different methods of creating callback loops.

These three examples watch for two events, or messages: the system closing, or the user clicking OK. (Both messages are handled identically in these examples, but in a real-world example, the actions could be quite different.) In these examples, either the dialog box is destroyed and the CallBackResume is sent, or the Loop variable is set to False. In either case, the callback loop ends, and the macro continues to the command that is directly after the CallBackWait command or the While loop. (In these examples, that next command is Quit, so the macro is ended.

The following example uses the CallBackWait and CallBackResume commands to create a callback loop.

The CallBackWait command creates the loop for the callback. While this loop is active, the dialog box waits for an event to trigger the callback. Most controls activate the callback, or send messages through the loop to the callback label. Any messages are handled in the Label section of the code.

```
DialogShow ("Dialog1"; "WordPerfect"; Msg)
CallBackWait()
Quit

Label (Msg)
If (Msg[5] = 274)
DialogDestroy ("Dialog1")
CallBackResume()
Return
Endif
If (Msg[3] = "OKBtn")
DialogDestroy ("Dialog1")
CallBackResume()
Return
Endif
Return
```

The following example uses a While loop to create a callback loop. This method is not as efficient or easy as using the CallBackWait and CallBackResume commands.

```
DialogShow ("Dialog1"; "WordPerfect"; Msg)
```
Loop = TRUE
While (Loop)
EndWhile
Quit

Label (Msg)
If (Msg[5] = 274)
DialogDestroy ("Dialog1")
Loop = FALSE
Return
Endif
If (Msg[3] = "OKBttn")
DialogDestroy ("Dialog1")
Loop = FALSE
Return
Endif
Return

The following example uses a procedure to create a callback loop.

DialogShow("Dialog1"; "WordPerfect"; Msg; "OKBttn")
CallBackWait()
QUIT

Procedure Msg()
Switch (Msg[5])
CaseOf 274:
// "Close" was selected.
DialogDestroy("Dialog1")
CallBackResume
CaseOf 273:
// The macro cannot get to callback array element 3 unless
// array element 5 is 273.
Switch (Msg[3])
// The user chooses a control on the dialog box.
CaseOf "OKBttn":
// "OK" was watched for.
DialogDestroy("Dialog1")
CallBackResume()
Using region commands to specify and return dialog-box values

A “region” is the name of a dialog-box control. A region name is generally made up of the name of the dialog box and of the control in question. Region names are case-sensitive.

Consider the following lines of code:

```plaintext
DialogDefine ( "MainDialog"; 50; 50; 200; 50; OK! | Cancel! _ 
| Percent!; "My Main Dialog" )
DialogAddText ( "MainDialog"; "TextControl1"; 10; 10; 180; 9; _ 
Left!; "Make a selection:" )
DialogShow ( "MainDialog"; "WordPerfect" )
```

In the preceding code, the dialog box called `MainDialog` has been defined with only one control — a text control. Both the dialog box and the text control have a region name. The region name for the dialog box is "MainDialog", and the region name for the control is "MainDialog.TextControl1".

Note that the region name of the control ("MainDialog.TextControl1") contains a period (.). The period is used to narrow the region. Whenever you refer to a region (that is, a dialog-box name and control name) in a dialog box, the period is used. The only time the period is not used is when it is only the dialog box that is being referred to, as in the following example:

```plaintext
RegionSetWindowText ( "MainDialog"; "A New Dialog Title" )
```

In the preceding example, the title text of the dialog box is changed to "A New Dialog Title". We do not need a narrowed region.

The need for narrowed regions becomes apparent when a macro contains multiple dialog boxes. Assume that a macro had two dialog boxes, `Dialog1` and `Dialog2`, and that each dialog box had a text control called "Text1". If we needed to change the text for that control, we would use the `RegionSetWindowText` command. Consider the following region command:

```plaintext
RegionSetWindowText ( "Text1"; "New Control Text" )
```

In the preceding region command, it is unclear which of the two controls is being referred to. (In fact, as written, the preceding code would generate a run-time error because the dialog box is not specified.) By prefacing the control name by the dialog box name, we can narrow the region to specify which dialog box and which control needs to be changed, as in the following corrected code:

```plaintext
RegionSetWindowText ( "Dialog1.Text1"; "New Control Text" )
```

The preceding region command would not generate an error. In this case, the text of control "Text1" would be changed in "Dialog1".

When naming dialog boxes and dialog box controls, use names that are descriptive. Descriptive names make it easier to remember what a control is used for, and they make your macro code more...
understandable. This usefulness of this guideline becomes especially clear if you want to expand your macro in the future.

In a callback dialog box, region commands can be used to update, change, query, and set values while that dialog box is active. The primary location to use region commands is in the callback loop. For example, if a dialog box contains a list box, and you want to trap the double-click event, you could write the following section of code:

```
DialogDefine ( "MainDialog"; 50; 50; 100; 125; OK! | Cancel! | Percent!; "Selection Dialog"
DialogAddListBox ( "MainDialog"; "ListBox1"; 10; 10; 80; 95; Sorted!; lbVar
DialogAddListItem ( "MainDialog"; "ListBox1"; "Pear"
DialogAddListItem ( "MainDialog"; "ListBox1"; "Apple"
DialogAddListItem ( "MainDialog"; "ListBox1"; "Banana"
DialogAddListItem ( "MainDialog"; "ListBox1"; "Orange"
DialogShow ( "MainDialog"; "WordPerfect"; Msg )
CallBackWait ()
DialogDestroy ( "MainDialog" )
Quit

Label ( Msg )
Quit()
EndIf

If ( Msg[3] = "OKBttn" )
vSelectedItem := RegionGetSelectedText( "MainDialog.ListBox1"
Type ( vSelectedItem )
CallBackResume()
EndIf

If ( Msg[3] = "ListBox1" AND Msg[10] = 2 )
vSelectedItem := RegionGetSelectedText( "MainDialog.ListBox1"
MessageBox ( vRetVar; "Selected Item"; vSelectedItem + " - was selected!"
EndIf
Return
```

As the preceding example demonstrates, you can use region commands to design sophisticated macros. A programmer who understands the task that needs to be performed can determine how many region commands are necessary.
Testing PerfectScript dialog boxes

Before you start putting your dialog box to use within its macro, it’s a good idea to test it. Testing a dialog box helps you ensure that it functions correctly.

If you created your dialog box by using PerfectScript code, you must test it by using the PerfectScript Debugger. For information, see “Debugging PerfectScript macros” on page 105.

If you created your dialog box by using the PerfectScript Dialog Editor, you can test it from directly within the Dialog Editor. For information, see “To test a dialog box by using the Dialog Editor” on page 101.

To test a dialog box by using the Dialog Editor

1. With the dialog box open for editing in the Dialog Editor, click Dialog ▶ Test.
2. Use each control on the dialog box, and make note of any necessary changes.
3. Close the dialog box to return to the Dialog Editor.
4. Make the necessary changes to the dialog box.
5. Repeat steps 1 to 4 until the dialog box functions as desired, and then save the dialog box.

Displaying PerfectScript dialog boxes

Regardless of whether you create a dialog box by manually coding it or by using the Dialog Editor, you must manually code the procedure for displaying that dialog box in your macro. The process of displaying a dialog box involves four steps:

- opening the dialog box
- releasing the dialog box
- closing the dialog box
- destroying the dialog box

For step-by-step information on displaying a dialog box in a macro, see “To display a dialog box in a PerfectScript macro” on page 103.

Opening dialog boxes by using PerfectScript code

You can use the DialogShow command to open a dialog box in a macro.

```perfectscript
DialogShow("DialogName";"WordPerfect";CallBack@)
```

The first parameter, Dialog, is required. This parameter specifies the name of the dialog box to be opened. (In the preceding example, this name is DialogName).

The second parameter, Parent, is optional. This parameter specifies the named region of the parent window for the macro dialog box. (In the preceding example, the WordPerfect window is the parent window for the dialog box.) Named regions are defined by the application. The region consists of the application name, followed by a
period ( . ), followed by additional words that narrow the named region to the appropriate window. For example, the named region of the document window in WordPerfect is `WordPerfect.Document`

Names for dialog boxes and controls are case-sensitive, so be sure to correctly reference them in your macros.

The third parameter, `Callback`, is optional. This parameter specifies a label that identifies a callback function. If you do not specify a callback parameter in the `DialogShow` command, the macro does not execute until you dismiss the dialog box. If you use a callback, the macro executes while the dialog box is displayed. It is up to the callback to prevent the macro from terminating prematurely and to shut down the macro dialog box by using the `DialogDismiss` command.

A fourth parameter not shown in the preceding example, `Focus`, is optional. This parameter can be used to specify the control that receives initial focus when the dialog box is opened.

For more information about the `DialogShow` command, please see the `DialogShow` topic in the PerfectScript Command Reference section of the Macro Help (`psh.chm`).

**Releasing dialog boxes by using PerfectScript code**

You can release a dialog box by performing one of several actions. The action that you perform is returned, as a value, to an implicit variable `MacroDialogResult`.

Clicking the **OK** button returns a value of 1, which instructs the macro to apply the changes that you made to the dialog box.

Performing one of the following actions returns a value of 2, which instructs the macro to ignore the changes that you made to the dialog box.

- clicking the **Cancel** button
- clicking the **Close** button on the system-menu box
- double-clicking the system-menu box
- pressing **Alt + F4**

Clicking a user-defined button or a user-defined hot spot returns the value of the `Control` parameter of that user-defined item.

For more information about the `MacroDialogResult` variable, please see the `MacroDialogResult` topic in the PerfectScript Command Reference section of the Macro Help (`psh.chm`).

**Closing dialog boxes by using PerfectScript code**

You can use the `DialogDismiss` command to close a dialog box in a macro (and clear the value of the implicit variable `MacroDialogResult`.)

The following is an example of the `DialogDismiss` command:

```
DialogDismiss("DialogName";"OKBttn")
```

The first parameter, `Dialog`, is required. This parameter specifies the name of the dialog box to be closed.

The second parameter, `Control`, is required. This parameter specifies the named region of the control that is used to close the dialog box.

Names for dialog boxes and controls are case-sensitive, so be sure to correctly reference them in your macros.
If your macro needs to refer to the value of the MacroDialogResult variable for a dialog box, assign that value to another variable before executing the DialogDismiss command.

If you need to reopen a dialog box, use the DialogShow command.

For more information about the DialogDismiss command, please see the DialogDismiss topic in the PerfectScript Command Reference section of the Macro Help (psh.chm).

**Destroying dialog boxes by using PerfectScript code**

You can use the DialogDestroy command to destroy a dialog box from memory. Destroying any unused dialog boxes in your macro is a good way to free up memory.

You cannot destroy dialog boxes that were created by using the Dialog Editor.

The DialogDestroy command has one parameter, Dialog, which is required. This parameter specifies the name of the dialog box to be destroyed.

For more information about the DialogDestroy command, please see the DialogDestroy topic in the PerfectScript Command Reference section of the Macro Help (psh.chm).

**To display a dialog box in a PerfectScript macro**

1. Open the macro for editing.
2. Type or insert the DialogShow command where you want the dialog box to open in the macro, and specify the following parameters for that command:
   - Dialog — to specify the name of the dialog box
   - Parent (optional) — to specify the named region for the parent window of the dialog box
   - Callback (optional) — to specify a callback parameter, if you want the macro to execute while the dialog box is open
   - Focus (optional) — to specify the name of the dialog-box control to receive initial focus
   **REMEMBER:** Dialog-box names are case-sensitive.
3. Assign the value of the implicit variable MacroDialogResult to some other variable if you want to capture the value that it receives when the dialog box is released.
   **REMEMBER:** If you close a dialog box by using a Cancel button, a control other than a push-button, or a non-existent control, your changes to the dialog box do not take effect. However, if you use a push-button other than a Cancel button, the variable values are set and your changes take effect when you dismiss the dialog box.
4. Type or insert the DialogDismiss command after a DialogShow command that uses callback, and specify the following parameters for that command:
   - Dialog — to specify the name of the dialog box
   - Control — to specify the named region of the control that is used to close the dialog box
   **REMEMBER:** Dialog-box names and control names are case-sensitive.
5. Type or insert the DialogDestroy command if you want to free up memory by destroying the dialog box.
   **REMEMBER:** You cannot destroy dialog boxes that were created by using the Dialog Editor.
Debugging PerfectScript macros

To ensure that your macros work as expected, it’s important to debug them by using the PerfectScript Debugger.

This section contains the following topics:
• “Getting started with the PerfectScript Debugger” on page 105
• “Using the Debugger to debug macros” on page 108
• “Getting more information while debugging PerfectScript macros” on page 110
• “Working with breakpoints while debugging PerfectScript macros” on page 115
• “Working with variables while debugging PerfectScript macros” on page 119
• “Navigating the code while debugging PerfectScript macros” on page 122
• “Troubleshooting the PerfectScript Debugger” on page 124

Getting started with the PerfectScript Debugger

When a macro is played or compiled, it is examined by the PerfectScript Debugger. The Debugger is designed to help you find and correct errors and other problems in your macros.

The Debugger workspace has the following features:
• a menu — provides access to all the commands for debugging macros. For more information, see “Using the Debugger menu” on page 105.
• a toolbar — provides access to common features for debugging macros. For more information, see “Using the Debugger toolbar” on page 106.
• the State line — indicates whether the Debugger is active and, if so, why. For more information, see “Using the State line in the Debugger” on page 106.
• the Source list — displays the source of the macro being debugged. For more information, see “Using the Source list in the Debugger” on page 106.
• the Call History list — displays, in reverse order, the user-defined subroutines that are called by the macro. For more information, see “Using the Call History list in the Debugger” on page 106.
• the Variables list — displays the variables that are accessible to the macro at the location indicated in the Call History list. For more information, see “Using the Variables list in the Debugger” on page 107.

The Debugger also provides several information windows, which provide details about the macros that you debug. For information, see “Getting more information while debugging PerfectScript macros” on page 110.

For information about any control in the Debugger, click (or press Shift + F1), and then click the control.

Using the Debugger menu

The Debugger menu gives you access to all the commands for debugging macros.

The Debugger menu is always displayed.
Using the Debugger toolbar

The Debugger toolbar gives you instant access to a wide range of features for debugging macros.

You can display or hide the Debugger toolbar by clicking View ▶ Toolbar. A check mark next to the Toolbar command indicates that the toolbar is displayed.

You can customize the Debugger toolbar by right-clicking any blank area on the toolbar. The Customize Toolbar dialog box is displayed, from which you can remove, add, or reorder the toolbar buttons. The toolbar configuration that you choose is applied when you debug all other macros.

Using the State line in the Debugger

The State line indicates whether the Debugger is active and, if so, why.

While the Debugger is active (for example, when a breakpoint is on the start of a macro statement, or when an error is incurred) the execution of the macro is suspended. You are therefore prevented from interacting with any displayed prompts, message boxes, or dialog boxes.

When a macro is playing, the State line reads, “Macro is running,” and the Debugger is inactive. Although you can use some Debugger features (for example, to set breakpoints) while the Debugger is inactive, you cannot use any features that access information about the state of the macro.

The State line is always displayed.

Using the Source list in the Debugger

The Source list displays the source of the macro being debugged (as taken from the listing file for the compiler).

You can display the source of another macro file (such as a Use file) by clicking File ▶ Open. The last nine accessed macro files are listed in the File menu.

The left margin of the Source list displays the following items:

• a red arrow — indicates the next line that the macro will execute
• an indicator — shows which statements have breakpoints, and whether those breakpoints are enabled or disabled

You can double-click any line that contains a macro statement to place a breakpoint on that line.

You can also enable or disable any defined breakpoint.

When you point to a variable, label, token, or command in the Source list, a floating tip displays details about that item. If the Debugger cannot identify the item — such as a variable that has not yet been defined, or a label defined in a Use file that has not yet been loaded — two question marks (??) are displayed.

The Source list is always displayed.

You can right-click the Source list to display a context-sensitive menu of relevant commands.

You can adjust the size of the Source list by dragging its split bar. Alternatively, you can select the split bar and use the arrow key to move it by 1 pixel; hold the Shift key to move the selected split bar by 5 pixels, or hold the Ctrl key to move it by 10 pixels.

Using the Call History list in the Debugger

The Call History list displays the user-defined subroutines (labels, functions, and procedures) that are called by the macro. The name of each subroutine is displayed, along with the line number where execution within that
subroutine was interrupted, and the file in which the subroutine is contained. The subroutines are listed in reverse order, so the current location is provided at the top of the list.

When you select an entry in the Call History list, the source for that macro is displayed in the Source list, and the associated line is highlighted and indicated by a green triangle in the left margin (unless the top entry is selected, in which case the red arrow is displayed). The variables accessible to the macro at that point are then displayed in the Variables list below.

For more information about subroutines, see “Understanding subroutines” on page 46.

- The Call History list is always displayed.
- You can right-click the Call History list to display a context-sensitive menu of relevant commands.
  
  You can adjust the size of the Call History list by dragging its split bar. Alternatively, you can select the split bar and use the arrow key to move it by 1 pixel; hold the Shift key to move the selected split bar by 5 pixels, or hold the Ctrl key to move it by 10 pixels.

**Using the Variables list in the Debugger**

The Variables list displays, by name, the variables that are accessible to the macro at the location indicated in the Call History list. Also displayed are the following:

- the pool type for each variable (Local, Global or Persistent)
- the type of value that each variable contains
- the current value of each variable

Arrays are a form of variables, and so they, too, are displayed in the Variables list — along with their declared dimensions and a Contents type of array. You can expand array variables to display the individual array elements in the list, or you can collapse them to hide the individual elements; in this way, you can examine the individual elements of the array as normal variables.

- If a variable is an address (alias) parameter to a user-defined subroutine, its Contents type is displayed as Alias, and it may be expanded and collapsed like an array to show the actual variable to which it is mapped.

  If an alias variable is mapped to a Global or Persistent variable, then the variable-pool type is displayed appropriately. However, if it is a Local variable, then the pool type is displayed as Local to Caller, to distinguish it from a variable that is local to the current subroutine.

The current sort column and sort order are indicated by a greater than symbol (>) or a less than symbol (<) before the name of the column.

- If the Variables list is sorted by variable name or by pool, expanded array elements are kept with their corresponding array. Sorting by the other columns may separate array elements from each other, depending on the contents of the array element.

For more information about variables, see “Understanding PerfectScript variables” on page 10. For more information about working with variables in the Debugger, see “Working with variables while debugging PerfectScript macros” on page 119.

- The Variables list is always displayed.
- You can right-click the Variables list to display a context-sensitive menu of relevant commands.
You can adjust the size of the Variables list by dragging its split bar. Alternatively, you can select the split bar and use the arrow key to move it by 1 pixel; hold the Shift key to move the selected split bar by 5 pixels, or hold the Ctrl key to move it by 10 pixels.

Using the Debugger to debug macros

You can use the PerfectScript Debugger to debug macros from within the PerfectScript utility.

You can also debug macros from directly within WordPerfect, Quattro Pro, or Presentations. For information, please see the Help file for the application.

Setting up the Debugger

Before you begin debugging macros, it's a good idea to set up the Debugger.

You can decide whether to display source code for each macro that you debug.

You can remove the source from a macro, even if that macro was compiled from an earlier version of PerfectScript. The act of removing the source from a macro cannot be reversed.

You can also protect a macro from being accidentally edited in WordPerfect. When a macro is protected, it can be compiled and played, but not opened, in WordPerfect. (Any attempt to open a protected macro in WordPerfect generates an “unknown file type” error.) The act of protecting a macro can be reversed.

For more information about removing the source from a macro or protecting a macro, please see the WordPerfect Help.

You can also decide whether to generate a listing file for each macro that you debug. The listing file makes a copy of each procedure in the macro and numbers each line of code, allowing you to tell which part of the macro corresponds to each line number. Any error messages and warnings that arose during compilation are provided at the bottom of the listing file. By using a listing file, you can more easily find and correct the errors caught by the Debugger.

The listing file has the same name as the original macro, but with a .wcl extension.

If you want to see which macro lines correspond to which line numbers, you can display the listing file in any ASCII-based text editor.

You can specify the settings for invoking the Debugger.

You can also specify whether create event logs while debugging macros.

For more information, see “Logging events for breakpoints” on page 117.

Finally, you can specify settings for animating macros. Animation lets you step through macros line-by-line, automatically invoking the Debugger at each step so that you can check the variables and other calls.

For more information, see “Animating macros” on page 123.

For more information about setting up the Debugger, see “To set up the PerfectScript Debugger” on page 109.
Debugging macros

Before you can debug a macro, you must compile it — and any other macro files that it “uses” or “runs” or “chains” to. Compiling a macro for debugging adds necessary information to the macro. For information about using the PerfectScript utility to compile macros, see “Compiling PerfectScript macros” on page 74.

A compiled macro can be debugged by playing it in the Debugger. For information about this process, see “To debug a macro by using the PerfectScript Debugger” on page 109.

The Debugger uses configuration (DBG) files to store macro-related information. The common configuration file for the Debugger is called startup.dbg. This file stores information about the Debugger, such as the following details:

- which macro filenames are stored in the “most recently used” list
- which information windows are open (see “To display or hide an information window in the PerfectScript Debugger” on page 114)
- which variable pools are displayed (see “To display variables while debugging a PerfectScript macro” on page 120)

When you debug a macro, the Debugger loads the settings that are stored in the startup.dbg file, and it checks the version number of the PerfectScript system against the version number of the macro system. All of this information is used to create a macro-specific configuration file, which is given a .dbg extension and stored in the same folder as the macro.

To set up the PerfectScript Debugger

1. In the PerfectScript utility, click **Tools** ➔ **Settings**.
2. Click the **Compile** tab, and enable any of the following settings:
   - **Include debug information** — displays source code for each macro that you debug
   - **Generate listing file** — generates a listing file for each macro that you debug
3. Click the **Debug** tab, and enable any of the following settings:
   - **Invoke debugger on macro start** — opens the Debugger when a macro is started
   - **Invoke debugger on errors** — opens the Debugger when a macro error is encountered
   - **Enable debugger event logging** — allows the Debugger to log events while debugging macros
4. In the **Animate** area of the **Debug** page, do the following:
   - Enable the ‘RunTo’ does ‘Step Into’ option if you want to step through macros one statement at a time, or enable the ‘RunTo’ does ‘Step Over’ option if you want to step through macros one subroutine at a time. For more information about these options, see “Stepping through macros” on page 122.
   - In the **Delay (seconds)** box, specify the number of seconds for the macro to pause after executing each step.

To debug a macro by using the PerfectScript Debugger

1. In the PerfectScript utility, click **File** ➔ **Debug** ➔ **Play**.
2. Select the macro that you want to debug, and click **Debug**.
   - If you are prompted to specify the listing file for the macro, do one of the following:
     - Specify the listing file. Select the listing file, and then click **Open**.
     - Decline to specify the listing file. Click **Close**.
3 Do any of the following:
   • Display any desired information windows. For information, see “Getting more information while debugging PerfectScript macros” on page 110.
   • Specify the breakpoint-related settings for the macro. For information, see “Working with breakpoints while debugging PerfectScript macros” on page 115.
   • Specify the variable-related settings for the macro. For information, see “Working with variables while debugging PerfectScript macros” on page 119.

4 Click Debug › Continue to play the macro through to the next stopping point, or choose another option for navigating the macro code. For information, see “Navigating the code while debugging PerfectScript macros” on page 122.

5 Use the specified macro editor to correct any errors.
   For information about debugging macros that stop at error messages or that contain faulty callbacks, see “Troubleshooting the PerfectScript Debugger” on page 124.

You can also

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Task</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Compile a macro by using the Debugger</td>
<td>In the PerfectScript utility, click File › Debug › Compile. Select the macro that you want to compile, and click Compile.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pause the debugging of a macro</td>
<td>Do one of the following:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Click Debug › Break.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Press Ctrl + F5.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>NOTE:</strong> This feature interrupts the macro and activates the Debugger, giving you access to various features in the Debugger.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Restart the debugging of a macro</td>
<td>Do one of the following:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Click Debug › Restart.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Press Shift + F5.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>NOTE:</strong> When a macro is restarted, all variables created by the macro — except persistent variables — are deleted. In addition, the Debugger begins at the top of the macro and resets all state information about the macro to its original conditions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stop the debugging of a macro</td>
<td>Do one of the following:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Click Debug › Stop Debugging.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Press Alt + F5.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>NOTE:</strong> When a macro is stopped, the Debugger closes. All defined breakpoints, watched variables, and opened macro files are stored in a Debugger configuration file for that macro. This file is given a .dbg extension, stored in the same folder as the macro, and loaded the next time you debug that macro.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Getting more information while debugging PerfectScript macros

The Debugger provides several windows that you can use to display various types of information about the current state of a macro. These windows are refreshed whenever the Debugger becomes active. Most of the
windows display information that is specific to the current execution point in the macro, but by selecting a
different entry in the Call History list of the Debugger (see “Using the Call History list in the Debugger” on
page 106), you can display information that is specific to the selected entry.

Each information window has a context menu that lets you navigate among the other information windows, the
main Debugger window, and any matching macro source line. By double-clicking an item in an information
window, you can jump to the position of that item in the macro (and highlight that item with a gray arrow in
the left margin of the Source list).

The Debugger provides the following information windows:

- **Label Table** window — lists all labels that are defined at the execution point that is selected in the Call
  History list. For more information, see “Using the Label Table window in the Debugger” on page 111.
- **Use File Table** window — lists all Use files that are referenced in Use statements by the macro file that is
  selected in the Call History list. For more information, see “Using the Use File Table window in the
  Debugger” on page 112.
- **Product Table** window — lists all applications and products that have commands in the macro file that is
  selected in the Call History list. For more information, see “Using the Product Table window in the
  Debugger” on page 112.
- **Dialog List** window — lists all user-created macro dialog boxes that are currently defined or that exist in
  the prefix packet of the macro file that is selected in the Call History list. For more information, see “Using
  the Dialog List window in the Debugger” on page 112.
- **Condition Handlers** window — lists all condition handlers that are defined for the execution point that is
  selected in the Call History list. For more information, see “Using the Condition Handlers window in the
  Debugger” on page 113.
- **Macro Info List** window — lists all data that can be obtained from the MacroInfo command for a macro
  when an execution point is selected in the Call History list. For more information, see “Using the Macro
  Info List window in the Debugger” on page 113.
- **Callback Queue** window — lists all items in the callback queue and indicates which callbacks are
  currently active and which are pending. For more information, see “Using the Callback Queue window in
  the Debugger” on page 113.
- **Macro Header** window — displays the object-header information for the macro file. For more
  information, see “Using the Macro Header window in the Debugger” on page 114.

For information about using the information windows, see “To display or hide an information window in the
PerfectScript Debugger” on page 114.

**Using the Label Table window in the Debugger**

The Label Table window lists all labels that are defined at the execution point that is selected in the Call
History list.

For each label, the following items are displayed:

- the name of the label
- the type of the label — which is either Local or Global. Local labels are defined by the Label statement in
  a macro, and they are visible only within the function or procedure where they are defined. Global labels
  are user-defined functions and procedures, and they are visible anywhere in a macro file, as well as in other
  macro files that have a Use statement of the file containing the function or procedure.
- the line number of the source line where the label (or function or procedure) is defined
- the name of the file where the label (or function or procedure) is defined
The Label Table window is a modeless dialog box.

**Using the Use File Table window in the Debugger**

The Use File Table window lists all Use files that are referenced in Use statements by the macro file that is selected in the Call History list.

If the labels for that Use file have been loaded (as happens the first time a function or procedure is called from the Use file), then the Loaded column shows True.

The Use File Table window is a modeless dialog box.

**Using the Product Table window in the Debugger**

The Product Table window lists all applications and products that have commands in the macro file that is selected in the Call History list.

If an Application statement for an application is in a macro, but the macro does not actually contain any commands for that application, that application is not displayed in this list.

Each application or product that is listed displays the version number of the PID (product interface description) file that was used when this macro was compiled. This version number is used to determine if a compiled macro has become out-of-date when a new version of an application is installed and the macro is played.

The Product Table window is a modeless dialog box.

**Using the Dialog List window in the Debugger**

The Dialog List window lists all user-created macro dialog boxes that are currently defined or that exist in the prefix packet of the macro file that is selected in the Call History list.

For each dialog box, the following items are displayed:

- name
- state
- type — which is either Text or Binary. Text dialog boxes are defined by using DialogDefine and DialogAdd statements in a macro, while Binary dialog boxes are created by using the Dialog Editor (see “Understanding dialog boxes for PerfectScript macros” on page 79) and are stored in the prefix packet area of a macro file.
- callback label — which is displayed if the dialog box is currently showing and a callback label was specified
- position and size (at creation, not current)
- style — which is defined in the DialogDefine statement or in the Dialog Editor

The states that are available to a dialog box depend on its state, as follows:

- Defined (Text dialog boxes only) — means that the dialog box has been defined by a DialogDefine statement but hasn’t been loaded or shown yet
- In Prefix (Binary dialog boxes only) — means that the dialog box was found in the prefix packet of the current macro file but hasn’t been loaded or shown yet
- Loaded (Text and Binary dialog boxes) — means that the dialog box has been loaded by a DialogLoad statement or by a Region command
- Showing (Text and Binary dialog boxes) — means that the dialog box is currently showing by a DialogShow statement
In the lower half of the **Dialog List** window, the list of controls defined for the selected dialog box are displayed. For each control, the following details are given:

- order
- name
- type
- position and size (at creation, not current)
- associated variable
- associated style
- associated data

The **Dialog List** window is a modeless dialog box.

**Using the Condition Handlers window in the Debugger**

The **Condition Handlers** window lists all condition handlers that are defined for the execution point that is selected in the **Call History** list.

For each condition handler, its action and data are displayed. The standard condition handlers — such as **Error**, **Cancel**, and **NotFound** — are displayed in this list, as well as handlers for callbacks such as **OnDDEAdvise** and callback dialog boxes.

The **Action** column provides information about whether the condition causes the macro to abort or quit, or whether the condition causes a label to be called or jumped to. If the handler has been disabled, the **Ignore** action is displayed, indicating that the abort, call, or jump will be ignored.

The **Condition Handlers** window is a modeless dialog box.

**Using the Macro Info List window in the Debugger**

The **Macro Info List** window lists all data that can be obtained from the **MacroInfo** command for a macro when an execution point is selected in the **Call History** list. This data can include labels, line numbers, and filenames.

The **Macro Info List** window is a modeless dialog box.

See also the Help for the **MacroInfo** command in the PerfectScript Command Reference section of the Macro Help (**psh.chm**).

**Using the Callback Queue window in the Debugger**

The **Callback Queue** window lists all items in the callback queue and indicates which callbacks are currently active and which are pending.

It is possible for multiple callbacks to be active at the same time.

The callback queue contains entries for callback dialog boxes and for **OnDDEAdvise** notifications. The label to be called by each callback is specified.

The **Status** column indicates whether this callback is for notification only, or whether the callback can affect the action that is performed by the macro system when the callback is complete. Callbacks are always for notification only.

The contents of the data array for the callback are also displayed, as is (where possible) an interpretation of the specific array elements.
The Callback Queue window is a modeless dialog box.

**Using the Macro Header window in the Debugger**

The Macro Header window displays the object-header information for the macro file, including the version number of the macro system that was used to compile this macro file.

The Macro Header window is a modal dialog box.

**To display or hide an information window in the PerfectScript Debugger**

- While debugging a macro, do any of the following:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>To display or hide the following</th>
<th>Do the following</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| **Label Table window** | Click View > Label Table (or press Alt + 1). A checkmark next to the Label Table command indicates that all labels that are defined at the execution point are displayed.  
**TIP:** You can double-click a label to display the macro file in the Source list and highlight the line containing the definition for that label. |
| **Use File Table window** | Click View > Use File Table (or press Alt + 2). A checkmark next to the Use File Table command indicates that all Use files that are referenced in Use statements by the macro file are displayed.  
**TIP:** You can load a Use file into the Source list by double-clicking it. |
| **Product Table window** | Click View > Product Table (or press Alt + 3). A checkmark next to the Product Table command indicates that all applications and products that have commands in the macro file are displayed. |
| **Dialog List window** | Click View > Dialog List (or press Alt + 4). A checkmark next to the Dialog List command indicates that all user-created macro dialog boxes are displayed.  
**TIP:** You can double-click a dialog box to display, in the Source list, the macro file where the callback label is defined, and to highlight the source line that contains the label definition. |
| **Condition Handlers window** | Click View > Condition Handlers (or press Alt + 5). A checkmark next to the Condition Handlers command indicates that all defined condition handlers are displayed.  
**TIP:** If a label is associated with a condition handler, you can double-click the item to display, in the Source list, the macro file where that label is defined and to highlight the source line that contains the label definition. |
Working with breakpoints while debugging PerfectScript macros

You can use breakpoints when debugging macros. When the Debugger encounters a breakpoint in a macro, the execution of that macro is interrupted and suspended, and the Debugger becomes active so that you can examine the state of the macro at that breakpoint.

Macro Info List window

Click View ▶ Macro Info List (or press Alt + 6). A checkmark next to the Macro Info List command indicates that all data that can be obtained from the MacroInfo command is displayed.

TIP: You can double-click an item to display, in the Source list, the macro file, and to highlight the source line that contains the label definition or line number.

Callback Queue window

Click View ▶ Callback Queue (or press Alt + 7). A checkmark next to the Callback Queue command indicates that all pending items in the callback queue are displayed.

NOTE: You can remove a selected callback from the queue window by pressing Delete or Backspace. However, a warning prompts you to confirm the action because deleting a callback can dramatically alter the behavior of the macro.

TIP: You can double-click a line to display, in the Source list, the macro file, and to highlight the source line that contains the label definition.

Macro Header window

Click View ▶ Macro Header (or press Alt + 8). A checkmark next to the Macro Header command indicates that all object-header information for the macro file is displayed.

NOTE: The Macro Header window displays data regardless of whether the macro is protected or whether it contains source code.

You can also

Jump to the associated source line from within an information window  Press Space.

Activate the main Debugger window  Press Ctrl + Home.

Activate the next information window  Do one of the following:
• Click View ▶ First/Next window.
• Press Ctrl + F6.
• Press Ctrl + Down Arrow.

Activate the previous information window  Do one of the following:
• Click View ▶ Last/Previous window.
• Press Ctrl + Shift + F6.
• Press Ctrl + Up Arrow.

Hide all information windows  Click View ▶ Close All.

Debugging PerfectScript macros
You can manage breakpoints by using the Breakpoints dialog box.

Setting breakpoints

You can set breakpoints at any line, any DLL call, or any other place in a macro. The Debugger becomes active when it encounters a breakpoint in the macro, during which time you can check the macro code for labels, functions, procedures, variables, and so on.

The Debugger automatically creates three breakpoints: **Macro Start**, **Macro End**, and **Error**. These breakpoints, which are indicated by an exclamation mark (!), can be removed if desired.

The Breakpoints dialog box has a context menu that lets you sort breakpoints by the following columns: **Type**, Location, Macro, and Pass Count.

The Type column indicates the breakpoint type:
- **DLL Call** — breaks when the macro calls a DLL file
- **Error** — breaks when an error occurs while running the macro
- **Label/Routine Call** — breaks when a label or user-defined routine comes up in the macro. Everything that is not specifically contained in a routine or label is in the `<main>` routine.
- **Label/Routine Return** — breaks when a label or user-defined routine comes up in the macro, but stops before executing the return from the label call
- **Line Number** — breaks when the macro reaches a specified line number. This is the most common type of breakpoint: It suspends the execution of the macro and activates the Debugger when the specified line number is reached.
- **Product Call** — breaks when the macro makes a call to an application or product
- **Variable Access** — breaks when the macro accesses a variable
- **Variable Assign** — breaks when the macro assigns a value to a variable

The Location column indicates the location of the breakpoint in the macro code.

The Macro column indicates the macro to which the breakpoint applies. By default, a breakpoint applies to all the macro files that are used by the macro that you are debugging; however, you can limit the breakpoint to a single macro file.

The Pass Count column indicates the passcount for the breakpoint, which represents the number of times that the breakpoint conditions can occur before the breakpoint actually takes effect. The passcount decrements each time that the conditions occur, and the breakpoint triggers when the passcount reaches zero.

For more information about setting breakpoints, see “To set a breakpoint in a PerfectScript macro” on page 117.

Moving between breakpoints

You can move between the breakpoints in a macro.

For more information about moving between breakpoints, “To move between the breakpoints in a PerfectScript macro” on page 118.

Disabling breakpoints

You can temporarily disable all breakpoints. In this scenario, no breakpoints are recognized — even if their conditions occur — until all breakpoints are re-enabled, or until the macro ends and the Debugger terminates.

For more information about disabling breakpoints, see “To disable all breakpoints in a PerfectScript macro” on page 118.
Logging events for breakpoints

You can log events while debugging macros. The event log records an entry for each event that occurs during debugging; these entries include standard messages (such as “Debugger event logging enabled”) and custom messages for which you supply the comment.

You can display the event log for a macro by clicking View ➤ Event Log or pressing Alt + 9.

All breakpoints allow a message to be logged to the event log (if enabled) when that breakpoint is triggered.

A breakpoint can be set to log a message, to cause a break in the macro, or both. In the left margin of the Breakpoints list, a hand symbol is displayed. A yellow hand indicates that a breakpoint that causes a break in the macro (and may also log an event message), while a blue hand indicates a breakpoint that logs an event message and does not cause a break in the macro.

For more information about creating event logs, see “To log events for the breakpoints in a PerfectScript macro” on page 118.

Executing tokens at breakpoints

When a macro is stopped at a breakpoint, you can execute any PerfectScript command (or “token”) in a very localized temporary environment. The Debugger displays the commands along with their parameters and types, and it lets you select a command and specify a value for each parameter. When you execute the selected command, its return value is displayed (and assigned to a variable name, if one is specified).

Be careful when executing tokens. Some PerfectScript commands cause the internal state of the running macro to change and can therefore cause errors to occur later in the macro. (Most of these commands do not appear in the command list and cannot be selected.)

Values cannot be assigned to variables that have the same name as command token names.

PerfectScript supports handler DLLs for third-party tokens. All tokens (not just the PerfectScript ones) are passed to the ValidateToken entry point. If the third-party DLL does not accept or approve the token, it can cause PerfectScript to abort the macro. PerfectScript tokens are passed to the HandleToken entry point in the third-party DLLs.

For more information about executing tokens, see “To execute a token at a breakpoint in a PerfectScript macro” on page 119.

To set a breakpoint in a PerfectScript macro

1 While debugging a macro, do any of the following:
   • Click Debug ➤ Breakpoints ➤ Edit.
   • Right-click any line in the macro, and then click Edit Breakpoints.
   • Press Ctrl + B.
2 Choose the type of breakpoint that you want to use from the Type list box, and then click Add.
3 Specify any settings for the breakpoint, and then click Update.
**You can also**

Set a line-number breakpoint in a macro

Do one of the following:

• Double-click the line in the macro.
• Select the line in the macro, and click Debug > Breakpoints > Add.
• Select the line in the macro, and press Insert.
• Right-click the macro, and click Add Breakpoint.

Remove a breakpoint from a macro

Do one of the following:

• Double-click the breakpoint in the macro.
• Select the breakpoint in the macro, and click Debug > Breakpoints > Remove.
• Select the breakpoint in the macro, and press Delete.
• Right-click the breakpoint in the macro, and click Remove Breakpoint.

**To move between the breakpoints in a PerfectScript macro**

• While debugging a macro, do one of the following:
  • Click Edit > Find Next Breakpoint (or press Ctrl + N) to go to the next breakpoint.
  • Click Edit > Find Previous Breakpoint (or press Ctrl + P) to go to the previous breakpoint.

**To disable all breakpoints in a PerfectScript macro**

• While debugging a macro, click Debug > Breakpoints > Enable/Disable All Breakpoints.

**You can also**

Disable a single line-number breakpoint

Do one of the following:

• Select the line that contains the breakpoint, and then click Debug > Breakpoints > Disable.
• Select the line that contains the breakpoint, and then press Space.
• Right-click the line that contains the breakpoint, and then click Disable Breakpoint.

Enable all breakpoints

Click Debug > Breakpoints > Enable/Disable All Breakpoints.

Enable a single line-number breakpoint

Do one of the following:

• Select the line that contains the breakpoint, and then click Debug > Breakpoints > Enable.
• Select the line that contains the breakpoint, and then press Space.
• Right-click the line that contains the breakpoint, and then click Enable Breakpoint.

**To log events for the breakpoints in a PerfectScript macro**

1 While debugging a macro, do any of the following:
  • Click Debug > Breakpoints > Edit.
  • Right-click any line in the macro, and then click Edit Breakpoints.
• Press Ctrl + B.

2 Select a breakpoint, and on the Actions page, do any of the following:
   • Enable the Break into debugger check box if you want that breakpoint to cause a break in the macro.
   • Enable the Log standard event message check box if you want that breakpoint to log a standard event message.
   • Enable the Log custom message check box, and specify the desired message, if you want that breakpoint to log a custom message.

3 Repeat step 2, as desired.

4 Click Event Log.

5 Enable the Logging enabled check box.

6 Click Save, and then specify a path and filename for the event log.

   By default, the event log is saved with a .log extension.

**To execute a token at a breakpoint in a PerfectScript macro**

1 While debugging a macro, do one of the following:
   • Click View ▶ Execute Token.
   • Press Alt + 0.

2 Select the PerfectScript token that you want to execute, and then specify any parameter and return values that you want to use.

3 Click Execute to perform the command and display any return value.

   Be careful when executing tokens. Some PerfectScript commands cause the internal state of the running macro to change and can therefore cause errors to occur later in the macro. (Most of these commands do not appear in the command list and cannot be selected.)

**Working with variables while debugging PerfectScript macros**

As explained in “Understanding PerfectScript variables” on page 10, a variable stores a value that can change during the operation of a macro.

When the Debugger stops at a breakpoint in a macro (see “Working with breakpoints while debugging PerfectScript macros” on page 115), the Variables list is updated to display, by name, the variables that are accessible to the macro at that location.

   For each variable, the Variables list provides the pool type (Local, Global or Persistent), value type, and contents. For more information, see “Using the Variables list in the Debugger” on page 107.

While debugging a macro, you can use the Variables list to display, watch, and create variables.

**Displaying variables in macros**

You can use the Variables list to display all variables, or to display a combination of watched variables, local variables, global variables, and persistent variables.
The **Variables** list displays all variables that are defined at the current step in the macro. As you click the entries in the **Label, Function, Procedure** list, the variables in the list change to display the local variables that are defined in each step.

Even though the **Variables** list may display multiple variables with the same name, only the most locally scoped variable with that name is accessible to the macro as it executes. For example, if there is both a local variable and a global variable named \( B \), only the local \( B \) can be accessed by the macro.

After a variable has been declared with the **DECLARE, LOCAL, GLOBAL, or PERSIST** statement in a macro, that variable appears in the **Variables** list even though its contents may be undefined.

When a macro contains a large number of variables, the **Variables** list initially displays only the first 100 variables. (In the case of an array, the **Variables** list displays only the first 100 elements, and of those, the values of only the first 25 elements.) If you want, you can expand or collapse the list of variables.

For more information, see “Displaying variables in macros” on page 119.

**Watching variables in macros**

If you are interested only in certain macro variables, you can add those variables to the **Watch** list. When the **Watch** list is displayed, it replaces the normal **Variables** list.

Only entire arrays or non-array variables can be watched. Individual array elements cannot be watched separately from their corresponding parent array.

For more information, see “To watch a variable while debugging a PerfectScript macro” on page 121.

**Creating variables in macros**

You can add variables to the macro that you are debugging. You can create new variables in any variable pool (Local, Global, or Persistent). Variables are created with undefined contents, but you can supply the value at any time.

For more information, see “To create a variable while debugging a PerfectScript macro” on page 121.

**To display variables while debugging a PerfectScript macro**

- Click **Variables ➤ View**, and then click any of the following:
  - **All** — displays all variables
  - **Watch List** — displays only watched variables
  - **Locals** — displays only local variables
  - **Globals** — displays only global variables
  - **Persistents** — displays only persistent variables.

A checkmark next to a command indicates that that type of variable is displayed.

**You can also**

**Sort the Variables list**

Click a column heading, or click **Variables ➤ Sort By** and choose a sorting method.

**TIP:** You can change the sort order of the Variables list from ascending to descending (or from descending to ascending) by clicking the heading of the sorting column.
You can also

| Expand collapsed variables or a collapsed array in the Variables list | Select the collapsed item, and then click Variables ➤ Expand.  
**NOTE:** Although you can expand the contents of an array, doing so can consume a great deal of time and memory, so a warning prompts whether to expand all elements or just the first 100 elements.  
**TIP:** When only the first 100 elements of an array are displayed, a 101st element represents the remaining elements in the array but without their values. You can display the remaining elements by clicking the [...] icon next to the 101st element, or by collapsing the array and expanding it again (to display the warning that prompts whether to expand all elements). |
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Collapse expanded variables or an expanded array in the Variables list</td>
<td>Select the expanded item, and then click Variables ➤ Collapse.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Refresh the Variables list</td>
<td>Click Variables ➤ Refresh.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**To watch a variable while debugging a PerfectScript macro**

- Do one of the following:
  - Select the macro, and then click Variables ➤ Watch.
  - Right-click the variable in the Variables list, and then click Watch.

  After a variable is added to the Watch list, it is displayed until you remove it from the list, even if the variable ceases to exist (for example, if it is removed in the macro). When a variable ceases to exist, its pool type is displayed as “out of scope.”

**To create a variable while debugging a PerfectScript macro**

1. When the Debugger stops at the desired breakpoint, click Variables ➤ New.  
The Create New Variable dialog box appears.
2. Type a name for the variable, enable the option that corresponds to the desired variable type, and then click Create.

  You can create an array variable by specifying the dimensions of the array after its name.

**You can also**

| Edit a variable while debugging a macro | Select the variable (or select the array that contains the variable, and then select the variable), change the contents of the variable in the Contents box, and then press Enter.  
**NOTE:** You cannot change the contents of an alias variable, but you can change the variable that is mapped to the alias.  
**NOTE:** If you change the contents of an array, the new value is placed in all of its array elements. However, changing the contents of an array element changes that element only and does not affect the contents of any other array elements.  
**TIP:** You can cancel a change by pressing Esc. |
Navigating the code while debugging PerfectScript macros

While debugging a macro, you have several options for navigating the code.

As previously discussed (see “To debug a macro by using the PerfectScript Debugger” on page 109), you can play through a macro during debugging. You can also pause, restart, or stop a macro during debugging.

Also as previously discussed (see “Working with breakpoints while debugging PerfectScript macros” on page 115), you can use breakpoints if you want to suspend debugging in places where you want to examine the macro more closely.

However, if you prefer, you can navigate macros by stepping through the code, using cursor position, enabling the animation feature.

You can also search the macro code if you want to locate a specific item.

Stepping through macros

You can go through a macro step-by-step. This process is called “stepping through the macro.”

The Debugger provides three commands for stepping through a macro:

• **Step Into** — executes the next single statement. If the next statement is a label call or a routine call, then execution steps into the specified label or routine (even if that label or routine is in another macro file, such as a Use file).

• **Step Over** — executes the call of the label or routine without stopping until its completion. The macro stops at the next statement in the current label or routine.

• **Step Out** — executes until the next return is encountered (if a label or routine is entered)

For information about this procedure, see “To step through a macro in the PerfectScript Debugger” on page 123.

Using cursor position in macros

The Debugger provides two commands for going through a macro by using cursor position:

• **Run to Cursor** — continues execution down to the line under the mouse cursor in the Source list

• **Skip to Cursor** — sets the next statement to be executed by the Debugger, without executing any statements between the current point and the new line. This feature lets you skip a series of statements without executing them, or allows for statements to be repeated.
For information about this procedure, see “To use cursor position while debugging a PerfectScript macro” on page 123.

**Animating macros**

The Debugger lets you animate macros. Animation allows you to step through macros line-by-line, automatically activating the Debugger at each step so that you can check the variables and other calls. Between each command, the Debugger is displayed for the amount of time specified in the Tools ➤ Settings dialog box.

For information about this procedure, see “To animate a macro in the PerfectScript Debugger” on page 123.

**Searching macros**

The Debugger lets you search a macro for a specific line number or text string. The Debugger also lets you locate the current line of code when a macro is interrupted.

For information about this procedure, see “To search macro code in the PerfectScript Debugger” on page 124.

**To step through a macro in the PerfectScript Debugger**

- While debugging a macro, do any of the following:
  - Click Debug ➤ Step Into to execute the next single statement.
  - Click Debug ➤ Step Over to execute the call of the label or routine without stopping until its completion.
  - Click Debug ➤ Step Out to execute the macro until the next return is encountered (if a label or routine is entered).

**To use cursor position while debugging a PerfectScript macro**

1. While debugging a macro, position the cursor by clicking in the Source list.
2. Do one of the following:
   - Click Debug ➤ Run to Cursor to continue execution down to the line under the mouse cursor in the Source list.
   - Click Debug ➤ Skip to Cursor to set the next statement to be executed by the Debugger, without executing any statements between the current point and the new line.

You can use the Skip to Cursor command if you need to skip a series of statements without executing them, or if some statements need to be repeated. However, this feature must be used with extreme caution: Skipping to a line that is not within the same label or routine can cause the internal macro execution state to become invalid and result in execution failure.

**To animate a macro in the PerfectScript Debugger**

- In the Debugger, click Debug ➤ Animate to begin playing the macro by using the specified animation settings.

  If the macro pauses, click Debug ➤ Animate to resume automatic play.

For information about specifying the Debugger settings for animation and other debugging features, see “Setting up the Debugger” on page 108.
To search macro code in the PerfectScript Debugger

- While debugging a macro, do any of the following:
  - To search for a specific line number, click Edit ▶ Find Line Number (or press Ctrl + G), and then specify the line number.
  - To search for specific text, click Edit ▶ Find Text (or press Ctrl + F), and then specify the text and the search options in the Find Text in Source dialog box that appears.
  - To search for the next instance of text that is specified in the Find Text in Source dialog box, click Find Next (or press F3).
  - To search for the previous instance of text that is specified in the Find Text in Source dialog box, click Find Previous (or press Shift + F3).

For information about searching for breakpoints, see “To move between the breakpoints in a PerfectScript macro” on page 118.

You can also

Locate the current line of code when a macro is interrupted

Click Edit ▶ Find Current Line.

The entire line of code is highlighted in the Source list.

Troubleshooting the PerfectScript Debugger

The techniques that you use to debug a macro depend on the type of failure that is occurring. This section describes two such types of issues:

- macros that stop at error messages
- macros that contain faulty callbacks

Debugging macros that stop at error messages

One of the easiest problems to correct with the Debugger is when a macro terminates due to an error.

To discover the cause of such an error, use the Debugger to play the macro as usual. When the macro stops, click Debug on the displayed error-message box to invoke the Debugger and load both the macro and the listing file for the macro compiler. The Debugger displays the following:

- the problem line in the macro (see the Source list)
- in reverse order, the labels, functions, and procedures that were called to get the macro to that point (see the Call History list)
- the contents of the variables in the macro (see the Variables list)

At this point, you can examine the source line to determine what the macro was doing when the error occurred. You can also check the contents of the variables that are being used at the current line to see if they contain incorrect, error-causing values.

If all the variables at this point in the macro appear to have the correct values, select a previous line in the Call History list, and examine the source line and the contents of the variables at that point. If you find a variable value that seems improper, examine the source code that leads to the problem area. Locate a spot where the variable could have been changed, and double-click the line to set a line-number breakpoint at that spot.
Now stop the Debugger by clicking **Debug ▸ Stop Debugging**. You cannot continue executing the macro because an error has occurred.

Restart the macro by clicking **File ▸ Debug ▸ Play** in PerfectScript. This displays the Debugger immediately before the macro starts.

Because you set a line-number breakpoint, click **Continue** and run the macro until it encounters the line number that contains that breakpoint.

When the macro reaches the line with the breakpoint, the Debugger is displayed. Examine the variable contents to verify that the macro is displaying the variable values that you expect. If not, you may need to specify a breakpoint at an earlier location and then restart the macro. You can also skip to the earlier location by clicking a line in the macro source and then clicking **Debug ▸ Skip to Cursor**.

If everything appears to be working normally, click **Step Into** to execute the macro one statement at a time. At each step, examine the variables between each statement until something unexpected happens. For example, the contents of a variable may change unexpectedly, or the macro may call the wrong label. At this point, you have probably come to the line where the value of the variable causes the error.

If it appears that the error occurs because a variable has the wrong contents, set a “variable assign” breakpoint for that variable by clicking **Debug ▸ Breakpoints ▸ Edit** and then choosing **Variable Assign** from the **Type** list box. When the contents of that variable change, a breakpoint occurs and the Debugger is displayed. If the variable is changed too often and too many breakpoints are occurring on the variable, disable the **Variable Assign** breakpoint and set a line-number breakpoint after most of the variable assignments are done but before the wrong contents are assigned. If the problem in the macro appears to be associated with calling a certain product token, set a **Product Token Call** breakpoint for that product token, or for a related product token that may not be setting the application in the proper state, or for both. If the problem is that the macro is calling a specific label, function, or procedure too often, set a **Label Call** breakpoint for that label to see when and where it is being called.

**Debugging macros that contain faulty dialog-box callbacks**

Debugging dialog-box callbacks is one of the most challenging types of debugging. Many problems with dialog-box callbacks occur because the callback does not reference the callback data closely enough to determine if the exact conditions have occurred before performing the action; consequently, the action is performed at the wrong time (or too many times).

A dialog-box callback label is called often, and most of the callbacks are usually not associated with the event of interest. As soon as a callback dialog box is shown, at least two or three callback events occur. These events are associated with the creation of the dialog box, the initialization of the controls, and the initial input focus that is received by the dialog box.

One of the difficulties that are associated with debugging callbacks is that when the Debugger becomes active at a breakpoint, the Debugger receives focus over any window that had focus while the macro was running. Therefore, the callback dialog box in the macro also loses focus. When a callback dialog box loses or gains focus, a callback event is generated.

If you set a breakpoint in a dialog-box callback label, a lose-focus callback event could occur on the callback dialog box when the Debugger is displayed. Then, when you continue macro execution in the Debugger, a gain-focus callback event could occur. This scenario could cause the breakpoint to stop the Debugger (because the callback label is called for the lose/gain focus of the dialog box), which would, in turn, cause more lose/gain callback events, which could cause another breakpoint, which could cause more lose/gain focus callback events, and so on.

---

**Debugging PerfectScript macros** 125
The macro interpreter and the Debugger attempt to minimize this cyclic occurrence by determining whether the dialog box is losing or gaining focus because of the Debugger. If so, the focus callback events are not generated. Unfortunately, this explanation cannot always be reliably determined.

The best way to prevent error loops is to write the dialog-box callback label so that it carefully examines the callback data array to determine the type of the callback event, and to have it respond only to specific callback event types. (Callbacks usually respond to events that are associated with manipulating a control, which are `WM_COMMAND` events with element `5` = 273). Next, set a breakpoint on a line of code that does not respond to losing or gaining focus. In this way, the breakpoint does not occur when the dialog box loses or gains focus, circumventing the error cycle.

If a callback event occurs for a callback label that is different from any callback label that is currently executing, then the callback event causes the current callback code to be suspended, and the new callback code is called. By restricting this focus to different callback labels from any currently active callback label, you can ensure that a callback can be completed before another callback for that same callback label is allowed to occur.

For more information, see “Setting up callbacks for PerfectScript dialog boxes” on page 96.

For more information about dialog boxes, see “Creating UI for PerfectScript macros” on page 79.
Quattro Pro macros

Understanding Quattro Pro macros .................................................. 129

Working with Quattro Pro macros .................................................... 131
Understanding Quattro Pro macros

Quattro Pro macros are stored in notebook cells. Use this type of macro when a task is performed within Quattro Pro.

錶 For details on the differences between Quattro Pro macros and PerfectScript macros, please see “Comparing Quattro Pro macros with PerfectScript” in the main Help file for Quattro Pro.

This section contains the following topics:
• “Understanding Quattro Pro syntax” on page 129
• “Understanding Quattro Pro macro commands” on page 129

Understanding Quattro Pro syntax

For an overview of Quattro Pro syntax, please see “Understanding Quattro Pro macro syntax” in the main Help file for Quattro Pro.

錶 See also “Examples of syntax in Quattro Pro macros” in the main Help file for Quattro Pro.

For details on the syntax elements used in Quattro Pro macros, please see “Native syntax elements” in the “Quattro Pro Command Reference” section of the Macro Help (psh.chm).

錶 For help converting Quattro Pro syntax to other macro languages, see “Converting Quattro Pro macros” on page 131.

Understanding Quattro Pro macro commands

For details on the commands used in Quattro Pro macros, please see the “Quattro Pro Command Reference” section of the Macro Help (psh.chm). You can browse commands alphabetically, or by category.

錶 For help converting Quattro Pro commands to other macro languages, see “Converting Quattro Pro macros” on page 131.
Working with Quattro Pro macros

You can create and edit Quattro Pro macros, and you can play and debug them.

If desired, you can convert Quattro Pro macros to other macro languages.

This section contains the following topics:
• “Creating and editing Quattro Pro macros” on page 131
• “Playing and debugging Quattro Pro macros” on page 131
• “Converting Quattro Pro macros” on page 131

Creating and editing Quattro Pro macros

You can create Quattro Pro macros by recording them or by writing (or “typing”) them.

You can also edit Quattro Pro macros.

For details, please see "Recording and editing Quattro Pro macros” in the main Help file for Quattro Pro.

The main Help file for Quattro Pro also includes the following topics on creating highly specialized Quattro Pro macros:
• “Using macros to customize application settings”
• “Using macros to display a dialog box”

Playing and debugging Quattro Pro macros

You can play a Quattro Pro macro by using the menu bar or by using the macro buttons on a customized toolbar. For details, please see "Playing macros” in the main Help file for Quattro Pro.

You can use the macro debugger to check for errors in a Quattro Pro macro. The debugger lets you assign all of the following: standard or conditional breakpoints, trace cells, and cells for editing. For details, please see “Debugging Quattro Pro macros” in the main Help file for Quattro Pro.

Converting Quattro Pro macros

If you want to use a Quattro Pro macro outside its notebook — for example, to automate tasks with several notebooks, or to interact with other WordPerfect Office programs — you must adapt it for use with PerfectScript or VBA.

Adapting a Quattro Pro macro for use with PerfectScript

In PerfectScript, the following Quattro Pro macro commands must be substituted as follows.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Native Quattro Pro command</th>
<th>Corresponding PerfectScript command</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>{ABS}</td>
<td>AbsoluteReference()</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>{ASSIGN}</td>
<td>AssignValue()</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Any other Quattro Pro macro command — unless otherwise noted in its corresponding Help topic in the “Quattro Pro Command Reference” section of the Macro Help (psh.chm) — can be converted to PerfectScript by using a standard procedure.

- To convert a Quattro Pro macro command to PerfectScript

### Adapting a Quattro Pro macro for use with VBA

You can copy Quattro Pro macro script to a VBA code module. For details, please see “To copy Quattro Pro macros to a VBA code module” in the main Help file for Quattro Pro.

### To convert a Quattro Pro macro command to PerfectScript

1. Remove the opening brace of the command and place it just after command name.

   Example 1, before:
   ```quattro
   {BlockCopy A1..A20,C10}
   ```
   Example 1, after:
   ```perfectscript
   BlockCopy{A1..A20,C10}
   ```

2. Replace the {} braces with () parentheses.

   Example 1, before:
   ```quattro
   BlockCopy{A1..A20,C10}
   ```
   Example 1, after:
   ```perfectscript
   BlockCopy(A1..A20,C10)
   ```

3. In the command name, change any periods to underscores.

   Example, before:
   ```quattro
   Print.Block(A1..A20)
   ```
   Example, after:
   ```perfectscript
   Print_Block(A1..A20)
   ```

4. If the command includes arguments, change each comma separator to a semicolon.

5. If an argument is calculated using a formula, enclose that formula in an Eval() statement.

   Example, before:
   ```quattro
   BlockFill_Start(+A20*0.25)
   ```
   Example, after:
   ```perfectscript
   BlockFill_Start(Eval("+A20*0.25"))
   ```

   *Eval() works only in PerfectScript macros.*
VBA macros

Understanding VBA macros .................................................. 135
Getting started with VBA macros .......................................... 147
Working with VBA macros .................................................... 157
Creating UI for VBA macros .................................................. 163
Organizing and deploying VBA macros ................................... 171
Understanding VBA macros

*Microsoft Visual Basic for Applications* (more commonly known as VBA) offers a fully integrated development environment (IDE) that provides contextual pop-up lists, syntax highlighting, line-by-line debugging, and visual designer windows. These helpful prompts and aids create a particularly friendly learning environment for inexperienced developers.

If VBA 6.3 is installed on your computer, you can access the VBA Editor from within WordPerfect, Quattro Pro, and Presentations.

VBA 6.3 is not included with WordPerfect Office X6. To use VBA macros, you must separately install VBA 6.3.

Before getting started with VBA in WordPerfect Office X6, it’s important to understand a little bit about VBA in general.

This chapter answers the following questions:

- “What is VBA?” on page 135
- “What is VBA automation?” on page 136
- “Who is VBA designed for?” on page 136
- “How does VBA compare with other programming languages?” on page 137
- “What are the main elements used in VBA?” on page 138
- “What is an object model?” on page 138
- “How is VBA code structured?” on page 140

What is VBA?

VBA is a built-in programming language that can automate repetitive functions and create intelligent solutions in WordPerfect, Quattro Pro, and Presentations.

VBA is both a language and an editor. It is not possible to have the language without the editor, nor is it possible to edit VBA in anything but the VB Editor or to run VBA programs without the VB Editor.

VBA is developed by Microsoft and is built into almost all of its desktop applications, including Microsoft® Office. VBA is licensed by Microsoft to other companies, including Corel (in CorelDRAW® Graphics Suite, Corel DESIGNER® Technical Suite, and WordPerfect Office), Autodesk, Inc. (in AutoCAD®), and IntelliCAD Technology Consortium (in IntelliCAD®). This makes Corel applications compatible with a wide array of applications that support VBA.

For a complete list of applications that support VBA, consult the Microsoft website.

It is not necessary for an application to support VBA in order for the WordPerfect Office X6 VBA engine to control that application. That means you can build solutions in WordPerfect Office X6 that access databases specialized content editors, XML documents, and more.
What is VBA automation?

Most actions that you can do in WordPerfect Office X6 can be done programmatically through VBA. This programmability is called automation. Automating repetitive tasks can save time and reduce effort, while automating complex tasks can make possible the otherwise impossible.

In its simplest form, automation is simply recording a sequence of actions so that you can play them back time and again. The term macro has come to include any code that is accessible to VBA while running within the process, even though some of that code might be far more advanced than a mere set of recorded actions. For the purposes of this guide, a macro refers to VBA functions and subroutines (which are explained in “Building functions and subroutines” on page 141).

While it is possible to record a sequence of actions in WordPerfect Office X6, the real power of automation and VBA is that these recordings can be edited to provide conditional and looping execution.

Who is VBA designed for?

VBA can be used by both non-programmers and programmers alike.

VBA for non-programmers

VBA is based on the successful Microsoft Visual Basic (VB) programming language. The main difference between VBA and VB is that you cannot create stand-alone executable (EXE) files using VBA, whereas you can with VB. That is to say, using VBA, you can create only programs that run inside the host application (in this case, WordPerfect, Quattro Pro, or Presentations).

VB is a “visual” version of the BASIC programming language. This means that it is a very easy language to learn, particularly because it provides visual cues within the editor. Microsoft has added a great deal to the original BASIC language, and it is now a powerful and fast language (although not as powerful as Java™ or C++, nor as quick as C).

The aim of this resource is not to teach you how to become a programmer but instead to teach experienced programmers how to apply their skills to developing useful solutions within WordPerfect Office X6. If you are not a programmer, you may find it useful to refer to the many books that have been written about VBA and VB before continuing to read this guide.

VBA for programmers

VBA is an in-process automation controller. In other words, VBA can be used to control the features of WordPerfect Office X6 that can be automated, and VBA runs efficiently by bypassing the interprocess synchronization mechanisms. However, the automation that the in-process VBA can access can also be accessed by the following:

• external out-of-process automation controllers (OLE clients)
• applications that are developed in programming languages (such as VB, Visual C++®, Windows® Script Host, and C++) that can be used to develop OLE clients
• the VBA engines of other applications
How does VBA compare with other programming languages?

VBA has many similarities with most modern, procedural programming languages, including Java and JavaScript, C and C++, and Windows Script Host. However, VBA runs as an in-process automation controller, whereas the other languages (apart from JavaScript) are used to compile stand-alone applications.

**VBA vs. Java and JavaScript**

VBA is similar to Java and JavaScript in that it is a high-level, procedural programming language that has full garbage collection and very little memory-pointer support. (See “Using memory pointers and memory allocation” on page 143 for more information.) In addition, code developed in VBA — much like code developed in Java and JavaScript — supports on-demand compilation and can be executed without being compiled.

VBA has another similarity with JavaScript in that it cannot be executed as a standalone application. JavaScript is embedded within Web pages, as a mechanism for manipulating the Web browser’s document object model (or “DOM”). Likewise, VBA programs are executed inside a host environment — in this case, WordPerfect, Quattro Pro, or Presentations — so as to manipulate the host’s object model (which is discussed in “What is an object model?” on page 138).

Most VBA applications can be compiled to P-code so as to make them run more quickly, although the difference is hardly noticeable given the sophistication of today’s computer hardware. Java can be similarly compiled; JavaScript, however, cannot.

Finally, whereas VBA uses a single equals sign (=) for both comparison and assignment, Java and JavaScript use a single equals sign (=) for assignment and two equals signs (==) for Boolean comparison. (For more information on Boolean comparison and assignment in VBA, see “Using Boolean comparison and assignment” on page 144.)

**VBA vs. C and C++**

Visual Basic — similarly to C and C++ — uses functions. In VB, functions can be used to return a value but subroutines cannot. In C and C++, however, functions are used regardless of whether you want to return a value. (For more information on functions and subroutines, see “Building functions and subroutines” on page 141.)

VBA allocates and frees memory “transparently.” In C and C++, however, the developer is responsible for most memory management. This makes using strings in VBA even simpler than using the CString class in C++.

Finally, whereas VBA uses a single equals sign (=) for both comparison and assignment, C and C++ use a single equals sign (=) for assignment and two equals signs (==) for Boolean comparison. (For more information on Boolean comparison and assignment in VBA, see “Using Boolean comparison and assignment” on page 144.)

**VBA vs. Windows Script Host**

Windows Script Host (WSH) is a useful addition to Windows for doing occasional scripting and automation of Windows tasks. WSH is an out-of-process automation controller that can be used to control WordPerfect Office X6. However, because WSH scripts cannot be compiled (and must be interpreted as they are executed) and must be run out of process, they tend to be slow.

WSH is a host for a number of scripting languages, each of which has its own syntax. However, the standard language used by WSH is a macro language resembling Visual Basic, so for standard scripts, the syntax is the same as in VBA.
What are the main elements used in VBA?

If you’ve ever developed object-oriented code in C++, Borland Delphi, or Java, you’re already familiar with the concepts of “classes,” “objects,” “properties,” and “methods,” but let’s re-examine them in greater detail as they apply to VBA.

A **class** is a description of something. For example, the class “car” is a small vehicle with an engine and four wheels.

An **object** is an instance of a class. If we extend the car metaphor, then the actual, physical car that you go out and purchase for the purposes of driving is an object (that is, an instance of the class “car”).

Most classes have **properties**. For example, the properties of the class “car” are that it is small, it has an engine, and it has four wheels. Every instance of the class “car” (that is, every object in that class) also has properties such as color, speed, and number of seats. Some properties, called “read-only” properties, are fixed by the design of the class; for example, the number of wheels or seats does not (usually) vary from car to car. However, other properties can be changed after the object has been created; for example, the speed of the car can go up and down, and, with a bit of help, its color can be changed.

A **method** is an operation that the object can have performed on itself. In the example of the class “car,” the car can be made to go faster and slower, so two methods for the class are “accelerate” and “decelerate.”

Objects are often made up of other smaller objects. For example, a car contains four objects of the class “wheel,” two objects of the class “headlight,” and so on. Each of these child objects has the same properties and methods of its class-type. This parent/child relationship of objects is an important one to recognize, particularly when referencing an individual object.

Some classes “inherit” features from their parents.

What is an object model?

VBA relies on an application’s **object model** for communicating with that application and modifying its documents. Without an object model, VBA cannot query or change an application’s documents.

Object models in software provide a high level of structure to the relationship between parent and child objects.

Remember, though, that the object model is the map that the VBA language uses to access the various members — objects, methods, and properties — of a document, and to make changes to those members. Without the object model, it is simply impossible to gain access to the objects in the document.

**Understanding object hierarchy**

In any object model, each object is a child of another object, which is a child of another object. Also, each object has child members of its own — properties, objects, and methods. All of this comprises an object hierarchy that is the object model.

In order to “drill down” through the layers of hierarchy to get to the object or member that you want, you must use a standard notation. In VBA, as in many object-oriented languages, the notation is to use a period ( . ) to indicate that the object on the right is a member (or child) of the object on the left.

It is not usually necessary to use the full hierarchical (or fully qualified) reference to an object or its properties. Some of the object-syntax in the fully qualified reference is mandatory or required; however, other syntax is optional (because a shortcut object for it is available, or because it is implicit or implied), and so it can either be included for clarity or omitted for brevity.
A shortcut object is merely a syntactical replacement for the long-hand version of the object.

**Understanding the PerfectScript and Script classes**

The object models for WordPerfect, Quattro Pro, and Presentations contain a class called PerfectScript, the methods for which correspond to the PerfectScript product commands for WordPerfect, Quattro Pro, and Presentations (respectively).

The object models for WordPerfect and Presentations also contain a class called Script, the methods for which correspond to the PerfectScript programming commands.

For guidance on using the methods of the PerfectScript and Script classes, please refer to the macro-command documentation in the “Macro Command Reference” section of the Macro Help (psh.chm).

**Understanding the WordPerfect object model**

The WordPerfect object model breaks down into five main classes:

- **Application** — contains properties that govern the application
- **Document** — contains properties, methods, and events that govern documents
- **GlobalMacros** — contains properties, methods, and events that are used for macro storage
- **PerfectScript** — contains methods that correspond to the PerfectScript product commands for WordPerfect, which are documented in the “WordPerfect Command Reference” section of the Macro Help (psh.chm).
- **Script** — contains methods that correspond to the PerfectScript programming commands, which are documented in the “PerfectScript Command Reference” section of the Macro Help (psh.chm).

For information specific to using VBA in WordPerfect, please see “Using macros and other automation features” in the main WordPerfect Help (wpwp.chm). The topic “Using the PerfectScript class to change WordPerfect documents” is particularly useful for creating a VBA macro that uses the PerfectScript class.

**Understanding the Quattro Pro object model**

The Quattro Pro object model breaks down into three main classes:

- **Application** — contains properties that govern the application
- **Document** — contains properties and events that govern documents
- **PerfectScript** — contains methods that correspond to the PerfectScript product commands for Quattro Pro, which are documented in the “Quattro Pro Command Reference” section of the Macro Help (psh.chm).

For information specific to using VBA in Quattro Pro, please see “Using macros” in the main Quattro Pro Help (qp.chm). The topic “Using the PerfectScript class to change a Quattro Pro document” is particularly useful, as are the VBA examples in “Reference: Using macros.”

**Understanding the Presentations object model**

The Presentations object model breaks down into five main classes:

- **Application** — contains properties that govern the application
- **Document** — contains properties, methods, and events that govern documents
- **GlobalMacros** — contains properties, methods, and events that are used for macro storage
• PerfectScript — contains methods that correspond to the PerfectScript product commands for Presentations, which are documented in the “Presentations Command Reference” section of the Macro Help (psh.chm).

• Script — contains methods that correspond to the PerfectScript programming commands, which are documented in the “PerfectScript Command Reference” section of the Macro Help (psh.chm).

For information specific to using VBA in Presentations, please see “Working with VBA macros” in the main Presentations Help (wppr.chm). The topic “Using the PerfectScript class to change slide shows” is particularly useful.

How is VBA code structured?

Because VBA is a procedural language that shares much in common with all procedural languages, your current knowledge should help you get off to a quick start with VBA.

This section examines the following topics on VBA structure and syntax:

• Declaring variables
• Building functions and subroutines
• Ending lines
• Including comments
• Using memory pointers and memory allocation
• Defining scope
• Using Boolean comparison and assignment
• Using logical and bitwise operators
• Providing message boxes and input boxes

The VB Editor formats all of the code for you (as discussed in “Formatting code automatically” on page 150). The only custom formatting that you can do is to change the size of the indentations.

VBA can create object-oriented classes, although these are a feature of the language and are not discussed in detail in this guide.

Declaring variables

In VBA, the construction for declaring variables is as follows:

Dim foobar As Integer

The built-in data types are Byte, Boolean, Integer, Long, Single, Double, String, Variant, and several other less-used types including Date, Decimal, and Object.

Variables can be declared anywhere within the body of a function, or at the top of the current module. However, it is generally a good practice to declare a variable before it is used; otherwise, the compiler interprets it as a Variant, and inefficiencies can be incurred at run time.

Booleans take False to be zero and True to be any other value, although converting from a Boolean to a Long results in True being converted to a value of -1.

To get more information about one of the built-in data types, type it into the code window, select it, and then press F1.
Data structures can be built by using the following syntax:

```vba
Public Type fooType
    Item1 As Integer
    Item2 As String
End Type
```

```vba
Dim myTypedItem As fooType
```

The items within a variable declared as type `fooType` are accessed using dot notation:

```vba
myTypedItem.Item1 = 5
```

**Declaring strings**

Strings in VBA are much simpler than in C. In VBA, strings can be added together, truncated, searched forwards and backwards, and passed as simple arguments to functions.

To add two strings together, simply use the concatenation operator (`&`) or the addition operator (`+`):

```vba
Dim string1 As String, string2 As String
string2 = string1 & " more text" + " even more text"
```

In VBA, there are many functions for manipulating strings, including `InStr()`, `Left()`, `Mid()`, `Right()`, `Len()`, and `Trim()`.

**Declaring arrays**

To declare an array, use parentheses — that is, the ( and ) symbols:

```vba
Dim barArray (4) As Integer
```

The value defines the index of the last item in the array. Because array indexes are zero-based by default, there are five elements in the preceding sample array (that is, elements 0 thru 4, inclusive).

Arrays can be resized by using `ReDim`. For example, the following code adds an extra element to `barArray`, but preserves the existing contents of the original five elements:

```vba
ReDim Preserve barArray (6)
```

Upper and lower bounds for an array can be determined at run time with the functions `UBound()` and `LBound()`.

Multi-dimensional arrays can be declared by separating the dimension indexes with commas:

```vba
Dim barArray (4, 3)
```

**Building functions and subroutines**

VBA uses both functions and subroutines (or “subs”). Functions can be used to return a value, whereas subs cannot. In VBA, functions and subs do not need to be declared before they are used, nor before they are defined. In fact, functions and subs need to be declared only if they actually exist in external system dynamic-linked libraries (DLLs).

Typical functions in a language such as Java or C++ can be structured as follows:

```java
void foo( string stringItem ) {
    // The body of the function goes here
}
```
In VBA, however, functions are structured as in the following example:

```vba
Public Sub foo (stringItem As String)
    ' The body of the subroutine goes here
End Sub

Public Function bar (numItem As Integer) As Double
    bar = 23.2
End Function
```

To force a function or sub to exit immediately, you can use `Exit Function` or `Exit Sub` (respectively).

**Declaring enumerated types**

To declare an *enumerated type*, use the following construction:

```vba
Public Enum fooEnum
    ItemOne
    ItemTwo
    ItemThree
End Enum
```

The first item in an enumerated type is assigned, by default, a value of zero.

**Ending lines**

In VBA, each statement must exist on its own line, but no special character is required to denote the end of each line. (This is in contrast to the many programming languages that use the semicolon to separate individual statements.)

To break a long VBA statement over two or more lines, each of the lines (other than the last line) must end with an underscore ( `_ `) preceded by at least one space:

```vba
newString = fooFunction ("This is a string", _
                          5, 10, 2)
```

It is also possible to combine several statements in a single line by separating them with colons:

```vba
a = 1 : b = 2 : c = a + b
```

A line cannot end with a colon. Lines that end with a colon are labels used by the `Goto` statement.

**Including comments**

Comments in VBA — similarly to in C++ and Java — can be created only at the end of a line. Comments begin with an apostrophe ( ` ' ) and terminate at the end of the line.

Each line of a multi-line comment must begin with its own apostrophe:

```vba
a = b ' This is a really interesting piece of code that
      ' needs so much explanation that I have had to break
      ' the comment over multiple lines.
```
To comment out large sections of code, use the following code (similarly to in C or C++):

```vba
#If 0 Then ' That's a zero, not the letter 'oh'.
' All this code will be ignored by
' the compiler at run time!
#End If
```

**Using memory pointers and memory allocation**

VBA does not support C-style memory pointers. Memory allocation and garbage collection are automatic and transparent, just as in Java and JavaScript (and some C++ code).

**Passing values “by reference” and “by value”**

Most languages, including C++ and Java, pass an argument to a procedure as a copy of the original. If the original must be passed, then one of two things can happen:

• a memory pointer is passed that directs to the original in memory
• a reference to the original is passed

The same is true in VB, except that passing a copy of the original is called **passing by value** and passing a reference to the original is called **passing by reference**.

By default, function and subroutine parameters are passed by reference. This means that a reference to the original variable is passed in the procedure's argument, and so changing the argument’s value within the procedure, in effect, changes the original variable’s value as well. This is a great way of returning more than one value from a function or sub. To explicitly annotate the code to indicate that an argument is being passed by reference, you can prefix the argument with `ByRef`.

If you want to prevent the procedure from changing the value of the original variable, you can force the copying of an argument. To do this, prefix the argument with `ByVal`, as shown in the example that follows. This `ByRef`/`ByVal` functionality is similar to the ability of C and C++ to pass a copy of a variable, or to pass a pointer to the original variable.

```vba
Private Sub fooFunc (ByVal int1 As Integer, 
    ByVal long1 As Long, 
    long2 As Long) ' Passed ByRef by default
```

In the preceding example, arguments `long1` and `long2` are both, by default, passed by reference. Modifying either argument within the body of the function modifies the original variable; however, modifying `int1` does not modify the original because it is a copy of the original.

**Defining scope**

You can define the **scope** of a data type or procedure (or even an object). Data types, functions, and subs (and members of classes) that are declared as private are visible only within that module (or file), while functions that are declared as public are visible throughout all the modules; however, you may have to use fully qualified referencing if the modules are almost out of scope — for example, if you are referencing a function in a different project.

Unlike C, VBA does not use braces — that is, the `{` and `}` symbols — to define local scope. Local scope in VBA is defined by an opening function or sub definition statement (that is, `Function` or `Sub`) and a matching `End`
statement (that is, End Function or End Sub). Any variables declared within the function are available only within the scope of the function itself.

Using Boolean comparison and assignment

In VB, Boolean comparison and assignment are both performed by using a single equals sign (=):

```vba
If a = b Then c = d
```

This is in contrast to many other languages that use a double equals sign for a Boolean comparison and a single equals sign for assignment:

```c
if( a == b ) c = d;
```

The following code, which is valid in C, C++, Java, and JavaScript, is invalid in VBA:

```vba
if( ( result = fooBar( ) ) == true )
```

This would have to be written in VBA as the following:

```vba
result = fooBar( )
If result = True Then
```

For other Boolean comparisons, VBA uses the same operators as other languages (except for the operators for “is equal to” and “is not equal to”). All the Boolean-comparison operators are provided in the following table:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Comparison</th>
<th>VBA operator</th>
<th>C-style operator</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Is equal to</td>
<td>=</td>
<td>==</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Is not equal to</td>
<td>&lt;&gt;</td>
<td>!=</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Is greater than</td>
<td>&gt;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Is less than</td>
<td>&lt;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Is greater than or equal to</td>
<td>&gt;=</td>
<td>&gt;=</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Is less than or equal to</td>
<td>&lt;=</td>
<td>&lt;=</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The result of using one of the Boolean operators is always either True or False.

Using logical and bitwise operators

In VBA, logical operations are performed by using the keywords And, Not, Or, Xor, Imp, and Eqv, which perform the logical operations AND, NOT, OR, Exclusive-OR, logical implication, and logical equivalence (respectively). These operators also perform Boolean comparisons.

The following code shows a comparison written in C or a similar language:

```c
if( ( a && b ) || ( c && d ) )
```

This would be written as follows in VBA:

```vba
If ( a And b ) Or ( c And d ) Then
```

Alternatively, the above could be written in the following full long-hand form:

```vba
If ( a And b = True ) Or ( c And d = True ) = True Then
```
The following table provides a comparison of the four common VBA logical and bitwise operators, and the C-style logical and bitwise operators used by C, C++, Java, and JavaScript:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>VBA operator</th>
<th>C-style bitwise operator</th>
<th>C-style Boolean operator</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>And</td>
<td>&amp;</td>
<td>&amp;&amp;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Not</td>
<td>~</td>
<td>!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Or</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Xor</td>
<td>^</td>
<td>^</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Providing message boxes and input boxes**

You can present simple messages to the user by using the `MsgBox` function:

```vba
Dim retval As Long
retval = MsgBox("Click OK if you agree.", vbOKCancel, "Easy Message")
If retval = vbOK Then
    MsgBox "You clicked OK.", vbOK, "Affirmative"
End If
```

You can also get strings from the user by using `InputBox` function:

```vba
Dim inText As String
inText = InputBox("Input some text:", "type here")
If Len(inText) > 0 Then
    MsgBox "You typed the following: " & inText & "." 
End If
```

If the user clicks Cancel, the length of the string returned in `inText` is zero.
Getting started with VBA macros

Now that you understand a bit about VBA, you’re ready to get started with macros.

This chapter covers the following topics:
• “Using the Visual Basic toolbar” on page 147
• “Using the VB Editor” on page 147
• “Using the Project Explorer in the VB Editor” on page 148
• “Using the Properties window in the VB Editor” on page 149
• “Using the Code window in the VB Editor” on page 150
• “Using the toolbars in the VB Editor” on page 152
• “Using the Object Browser in the VB Editor” on page 152

Using the Visual Basic toolbar

WordPerfect and Quattro Pro feature a toolbar that provides easy access to the VB Editor.

The toolbar buttons provide the following functions:
• playing macros
• opening the VB Editor
• switching the VB Editor between its modes for designing and running macros

To display the Visual Basic toolbar in WordPerfect or Quattro Pro
1 Click View ▶ Toolbars.
2 Enable the Visual Basic check box, and then click OK.

Using the VB Editor

The VB Editor that is included with VBA is similar to the one included with full Visual Basic.

The VB Editor lets you develop code and dialog boxes, browse the object tree and the modules within each project, set individual properties for objects, and debug code. However, it’s important to note that the VB Editor for VBA cannot compile executable (EXE) program files.

The VB Editor features several windows and toolbars, all of which are discussed in this section. The three available windows are the Project Explorer (see “Using the Project Explorer in the VB Editor” on page 148), the Properties window (see “Using the Properties window in the VB Editor” on page 149), and the Code window (see “Using the Code window in the VB Editor” on page 150). The four available toolbars (see “Using the toolbars in the VB Editor” on page 152), are the Standard toolbar, the Debug toolbar, the Edit toolbar, and the UserForm toolbar, of which you will use the Standard and Debug toolbars most often.
The VB Editor also lets you access the Object Browser (see “Using the Object Browser in the VB Editor” on page 152).

You can invoke the VB Editor from within WordPerfect, Quattro Pro, or Presentations. Although this starts VBA as a new application in Windows, it runs within the WordPerfect, Quattro Pro, or Presentations process.

To start the VB Editor

- Click Tools ➤ Visual Basic ➤ Visual Basic Editor, or press Alt + F11.

❖ To switch between the VB Editor and WordPerfect, Quattro Pro, or Presentations, use the Windows taskbar, or press Alt + F11 or Alt + Tab.

Using the Project Explorer in the VB Editor

The Project Explorer is essential for navigating VBA projects and their constituent documents/objects, forms, modules, and class modules.

The Project Explorer with a module selected
Each type of item in the Project Explorer has an icon assigned to it:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Icon</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>project</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>folder</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>document/object</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>form</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>module</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>class module</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

To display or hide the Project Explorer

- Click View ➤ Project Explorer, or press Ctrl + R.

Using the Properties window in the VB Editor

The Properties window lists all of the editable properties for the currently selected object. Many objects in VBA — including projects, modules, and forms and their controls — have property sheets that can be modified.

The Properties window, showing the properties of a form

The Properties window is automatically updated when you select an object, or when you change the properties of the selected object by using other methods (for example, by using the mouse to move and resize form controls).
To display or hide the Properties window
• Click View ➤ Properties window, or press F4.

Using the Code window in the VB Editor

The Code window is where you spend most of your time when working on macros. A standard code editor in the style of Microsoft® Visual Studio®, the Code window lets you format code automatically, color and check syntax automatically, jump to definitions, and use contextual pop-up lists and automatic completion.

If you are already familiar with any of the Microsoft Visual Studio editors, the VB Editor Code window will be entirely familiar to you.

Formatting code automatically

The VB Editor formats code automatically for you — even the capitalization of keywords, functions, subroutines, and variables is taken care of by the VB Editor, irrespective of what you type.

You cannot custom-format code, although you can set the indentation for each line, as well as the placing of custom line breaks.

When it comes to calling functions and subs, you must adhere to the following rules:
• If you are calling a function and you are using the returned value, the parentheses around the parameters are mandatory (just as in most modern programming languages):
  a = fooFunc (b, c)
• However, if the returned value from a function call is being discarded, or if you are calling a sub, the parentheses must be left out (unlike in most other languages):
  barFunc d, e
  fooBarSub f
• If you prefer always to see the parentheses, use the Call keyword before the function or sub call:
  Call barFunc (d, e)
  Call fooBarSub (f)

Coloring syntax automatically

When you develop code in the Code window, the editor colorizes each word according to its classification:
• VBA keywords and programming statements are usually displayed in blue.
• Comments are displayed in green.
• All other text is displayed in black.

This colorization makes the code much easier to read.

The Code window also uses the following colorization techniques:
• Lines of code containing errors are displayed in red.
• Selected text is white on blue.
• The line where execution paused for debugging is shown as a yellow highlight.
• Breakpoints that you set for debugging purposes are shown as a red dot in the left margin with the code in white on a red background.
• Bookmarks (which you set in the code) are indicated by a blue dot in the left margin.
Breakpoints (along with bookmarks) are lost when you quit the application. For more information on them, see “Setting breakpoints” on page 159.

You can modify the default colors for syntax highlighting by clicking Tools ▶ Options, clicking the Editor format tab, and making your changes.

**Checking syntax automatically**

Every time you move the cursor out of a line of code, the editor checks the syntax of the code in that line; if it finds an error, it changes the color of the text of that line to red and displays a pop-up a warning. This real-time checking is useful (particularly when you are learning VBA) because it indicates many possible errors in the code without having you run the code.

You can disable pop-up warnings by clicking Tools ▶ Options, clicking the Editor tab, and then disabling the Auto syntax check check box. The VB Editor still checks the syntax and highlights erroneous lines in red, but it stops displaying a warning when you paste text from another line of code.

**Jumping to definitions**

You can jump directly to the definition of a variable, procedure, or object by right-clicking the item in the Code window and then clicking Definition. This takes you either to the definition of the variable or function in the code or to the object’s definition in the Object Browser.

To return to where you requested the definition, right-click, and then click Last position in the Code window.

**Using contextual pop-up lists and automatic completion**

As you write procedures and define variables, the VB Editor adds these items to an internal list that already contains all of its built-in keywords and enumerated values. As you type, the VB Editor presents you with a list of candidate words that you may want to insert at the current position; this list is contextual, so the VB Editor usually presents only the words that are valid for the current position.

This list makes code development quicker and more convenient, particularly because you do not need to remember every function and variable name but can instead choose them from the list provided. If you type the first few characters of the word you want to use, the list advances to the nearest candidate that matches the characters you’ve entered. Select the word you want to use, and either type the character that you want to have follow the word (typically a space, line feed, parenthesis, period, or comma) or press Tab or Ctrl + Enter to enter only the word.

To force the pop-up menu display, you can press Ctrl + Spacebar. The menu scrolls to the word that most closely matches the characters that you have typed so far. This technique is also useful for filling parameter lists when calling a function or subroutine. If there is only one exact match, the VB Editor inserts the word without popping up the list. To display the pop-up list for the selected keyword at any time without auto-filling it, press Ctrl + J.
Using the toolbars in the VB Editor

The VB Editor features four toolbars that you can use to carry out your VBA tasks.

The Standard toolbar is the default toolbar.

The Debug toolbar contains buttons for common debugging tasks (as discussed in “Debugging VBA macros” on page 159).

The Edit toolbar contains buttons for common editing tasks.

The UserForm toolbar contains buttons specific to designing forms (as discussed in “Designing dialog boxes for VBA macros” on page 165).

You can choose to display or hide each toolbar.

To display or hide a toolbar

• Click View ▸ Toolbars, and then click the command that corresponds to the toolbar you want to display or hide.

A check mark next to a command indicates that its toolbar is currently displayed.

You can “float” a toolbar by dragging it from the menu bar.

You can dock a toolbar by dragging it to the menu bar.

Using the Object Browser in the VB Editor

The Object Browser is one of the most useful tools provided by the VB Editor. The Object Browser displays the entire object model of all referenced components (that is, all ActiveX® or OLE objects that are used by the project) and, most importantly, the object model of WordPerfect, Quattro Pro, or Presentations — all in an easy-to-use, structured format.
To open the Object Browser, click View ▶ Object Browser, or press F2.

To reference the object models for other applications, click Tools ▶ References. Referenced components can be accessed by the VBA code.

All of the referenced objects — plus the current module — are listed in the Project/Library list box in the upper-left corner of the Object Browser. By default, all of the member classes for the referenced objects are provided in the Class list.

It is easier to use the Object Browser when only one project or library is displayed. To display only one project or library, choose it from the Project/Library list box.

More detailed information follows about certain Object Browser elements.

**Using the Class list**

The Class list shows all of the classes in the current project or library.

When you select a class in the Class list, the members of that class are shown in the Member list.

Every project or library has an object model that contains a number of member classes. Next to each item in the Class list, an icon depicts its class type:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Class icon</th>
<th>Type</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>global value</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>module</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>enumerated type</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Global values (which apply to the selected project in its entirety) include individual members from enumerated types (such as text paragraph alignments, shape types, and import/export filters).

Member classes of an object have their own members.

To receive detailed information about a selected item, click the Help button at the top of the Object Browser.

### Using the Member list

The Member list shows all of the properties, methods, and events that are members of the current class. Each member is given an icon according to its type:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Class icon</th>
<th>Type</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>![property icon]</td>
<td>property</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>![implied or default property icon]</td>
<td>implied or default property</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>![method icon]</td>
<td>method</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>![event icon]</td>
<td>event</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>![constant icon]</td>
<td>constant</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Property members may be simple types (such as Booleans, integers, or strings), or they may be a class or enumerated type from the Class list. A property that is based on a class from the Class list inherits all the members of that class.

Many classes have a default property, indicated by a blue dot in their icon. The default property is implied if no property name is given when getting or setting the value of the parent object.

Methods are commonly known as “member functions” — functions that the class can perform on itself.

If the return value of a function is not used, the function call does not take parentheses around the argument list unless the Call keyword is used.

Some classes have various events associated with them. By setting up an event handler for a class’s event, when that event occurs in the application, the event’s handler is called. This functionality enables sophisticated applications to be developed that respond automatically to what is happening within the application.
The constants listed in the Member list are either members of enumerated types or defined as Public in a module. Enumerated types are used to group related items from a closed list.

**Using the Information window**

The Information window gives information about the selected class or class member. This information includes a “prototype” of the member, its parent, and a short description of the member, and it also states whether the member is a read-only property.

```
Sub AddressBookFormatAdd(Name As String, Format As String)
    Member of WordPerfect PerfedScript
    Create a custom address format
```

**The Information window**

The types of any function parameters and properties are given as hyperlinks to the type definition or class itself, if the type is defined within the current object model.

To increase the height of the Information window, drag the top border of the window upwards to reveal its contents, or scroll down using the scrolls bar at the right of the window.

**Using the search controls**

You can search the object model for a matching string. This is useful for finding a class or member whose name you can only partly remember, or for finding classes and members that have similar names (such as names based on, or containing, the word “open”).

To search an object model’s classes and members, type a string into the Search box, and then click the Search button. The Search Results list appears, displaying all of the found matches in alphabetical order. Clicking a found match advances the Class and Member lists to that item and displays its information in the Information window.
Matching class names have a blank Member column in the Search Results window.

To hide the Search Results window, click the Hide search results button.
Working with VBA macros

Now that you know your way around the VBA workspace, you are ready to begin working with macros.

This chapter covers the following topics:
- “Creating VBA macros” on page 157
- “Running VBA macros” on page 158
- “Debugging VBA macros” on page 159
- “Using the VBA debugging windows” on page 159

For information on the WordPerfect Office X6 object models, see the “What is an object model?” on page 138.

Creating VBA macros

WordPerfect, Quattro Pro, and Presentations let you create VBA macros. However, WordPerfect Office uses the PerfectScript scripting language natively, and although PerfectScript is a separate editor from VBA, VBA in WordPerfect Office must access the PerfectScript object to write a VBA macro.

Traditionally, there are two ways to create a macro: by writing (or "scripting") it, or by recording it.

Detailed information on scripting VBA macros is beyond the scope of the WordPerfect Office documentation. For basic information on creating VBA macros, please see the following Help topics:
- WordPerfect Help (wpwp.chm): “Integrating with Microsoft Visual Basic for Applications”
- Quattro Pro Help (qp.chm): “Creating VBA macros”
- Presentations Help (wppr.chm): “Creating and editing VBA macros”

You can record macros in WordPerfect, Quattro Pro, and Presentations; however, you cannot record VBA macros. Macros recorded from within WordPerfect Office are not rendered as VBA code but instead as PerfectScript code. For information on recording PerfectScript macros, see “Recording PerfectScript macros” on page 70.

Recording PerfectScript macros can give you a glimpse into the logic of VBA. If you need help getting started with scripting VBA, you may want to start by recording a PerfectScript macro.

Creating global macros

WordPerfect and Presentations let you create global macros, which can be used in all projects. When you write a global macro, you store it to the application’s Global Macro Storage (GMS) file. The GMS files for WordPerfect and Presentations are WordPerfect**.gms and Presentations**.gms, respectively (where ** represents the version number). The VB Editor stores all of the modules for that project in the application’s GMS file.

WordPerfect and Presentations do not support having more than one GMS file.
Quattro Pro does not support GMS files.

Using modules

Each project that you create can contain several modules. The Project Explorer (see “Using the Project Explorer in the VB Editor” on page 148) presents each module type in its own folder. You cannot move a module from
one folder to another within the same project, but you can drag a module to another project to make a copy of it there. There are four types of modules:

- **WordPerfect Objects, QuattroPro Objects, or Presentations Objects** — used mostly for event handling, contains a single item (ThisDocument, ThisNotebook, and ThisSlideShow, respectively) and should not be used for normal code
- **forms** — used for custom dialog boxes and user interfaces, including the code to control them
- **modules** — used for general code and macros
- **class modules** — used for object-oriented Visual Basic classes (which are not discussed in this guide)

To write the macro, you can use the VB Editor. Macros that are developed in the VB Editor can take advantage of full programming control, including conditional execution, looping, and branching. In effect, you can write macros that are programs in their own right. (For the purposes of this guide, however, all VBA code is referred to as a macro even though, in some contexts, a macro is just those parts of that code that can be launched by WordPerfect, Quattro Pro, or Presentations.)

**Running VBA macros**

You can run macros either from directly within WordPerfect, Quattro Pro, or Presentations or from within the VB Editor.

**To run a VBA macro from within WordPerfect, Quattro Pro, or Presentations**

1. Click Tools » Visual Basic » Play.
   
   In WordPerfect and Quattro Pro, you can also click the Play button on the Visual Basic toolbar.
2. From the Macros in list box, choose the VBA project in which the recorded macro is stored.
3. Select the macro in the Macro name list.
4. Click Run.

**To run a VBA macro from within the VB Editor**

- Click anywhere in the subroutine that forms the macro, and then click Run » Run macro.
Debugging VBA macros

The VB Editor provides strong debugging facilities that are common to language editors. It is possible to set breakpoints and to step through code.

You can also make changes to the code while it is running and watch and change variables, but these are advanced techniques that are not discussed in this guide.

Setting breakpoints

A breakpoint is a marker in a line of code that causes execution to pause. To continue, you must either restart the execution or step through the subsequent lines of code.

To set or clear a breakpoint, click the line and then click Debug ➤ Toggle breakpoint. By default, the line is highlighted in dark red and a red dot is placed in the margin. To clear all breakpoints, click Debug ➤ Clear all breakpoints.

To restart the code after it pauses at a breakpoint, click Run ➤ Continue. To pause the execution of the code (immediately exiting from all functions and discarding all return values), click Run ➤ Reset.

You can also “run to cursor” — that is, execute the code until it reaches the line that the cursor is on, and then pause at that line. To do this, click the line where you want execution to pause, and then click Debug ➤ Run to cursor.

If the line with the breakpoint (or the cursor when “running to cursor”) is not executed because it is in a conditional (if-then-else) block, the code does not stop at that line.

Breakpoints are not saved. They are lost when you close the VB Editor.

Stepping through the code

When execution pauses at a breakpoint, you can continue through the code one line at a time. This lets you examine the values of individual variables after each line and determine how the code affects the values (and how the values affect the code). This is called “stepping through the code.”

To step through the code (one line at a time), click Debug ➤ Step into. The execution advances to every line in all called functions and subs.

To step through each line of the current function or sub but not through the lines of each called function or sub, click Debug ➤ Step over. The called functions and subs are executed, but not line-by-line.

To execute the rest of the current function or sub but pause when the function or sub returns to the point where it was called, click Debug ➤ Step out. This is a quick way of returning to the point of entry of a function, so as to continue stepping through the calling function’s code.

Using the VBA debugging windows

There are four windows that are used when debugging code:

- the Call Stack window
- the Immediate window
- the Locals window
- the Watches window
All of these windows provide important information about the state of functions and variables while an application is running.

**Using the Call Stack window**

The Call Stack window is a modal dialog box that lists which function calls which function. In long, complicated applications, this is useful for tracing the steps to a particular function being called. To visit a function listed in the window, select the function name and then click **Show**, or else close the window.

To display the Call Stack window, click **View ➤ Call Stack**.

![The Call Stack window](image)

**Using the Immediate window**

The Immediate window allows you to type in and run arbitrary lines of code while a macro is paused. This is useful for getting or setting the property of an object in the document, or for setting the value of a variable in the code. To run a piece of code, type it in the Immediate window, and then press **Enter**. The code is executed immediately.

To display the Immediate window, click **View ➤ Immediate window**.

![The Immediate window](image)

**Using the Locals window**

The Locals window displays all of the variables and objects that exist within the current scope. Each variable’s type and value are listed in the columns next to the variable’s name. Some variables and objects may have several children, which can be displayed by clicking the expand tree button next to the parent. Many variables let you edit their value by clicking it.
To display the Locals window, click View ▶ Locals window.

![The Locals window](image)

**Using the Watches window**

The Watches window is used to watch specific variables or object properties. This is very useful for selecting just one or two values to watch as opposed to having to find the value you want in all the values in the Locals window.

![The Watches window](image)

To add a value to the Watches window, select the variable or object and its property, and then drag the selection onto the Watches window; alternatively, click the item, and then click Debug ▶ Quick Watch to add the item directly to the Watches window.
Select the item you want to watch, select any conditions for this watch, and then click OK. If the condition becomes true, the application pauses to let you examine the code.
Creating UI for VBA macros

An important part of many VBA solutions is the user interface (or “UI”). A well-designed user interface makes the VBA solution so easy to use or so powerful that the user doesn’t hesitate to use it.

Most user interfaces for complex VBA solutions are based on a dialog box or form, but simpler user interfaces can be created by using toolbars and buttons (which can, in turn, be enhanced with captions and tooltips, and images or icons).

However, regardless of the nature of a user interface, its VBA solution can be made easier to deploy and support by providing the user with some form of help.

This chapter covers the following topics:
• “Creating dialog boxes for VBA macros” on page 163
• “Coding dialog boxes for VBA macros” on page 165
• “Designing dialog boxes for VBA macros” on page 165
• “Providing help for VBA macros” on page 170

Creating dialog boxes for VBA macros

All dialog boxes should abide by the following guidelines:
• They should have a meaningful title.
• They should provide an obvious functionality for cancelling or closing them.
• Their layout should make them easy to use, but they should also provide a Help button from which users can access how-to documentation.
• Their every control should feature a ControlTipText string, so that users can receive information about each control by passing the pointer over it.

However, there are two kinds dialog boxes: modal and modeless.

Modal dialog boxes must be acted upon before the user can resume the macro. The application is locked until the dialog box is dismissed (either by submitting it or by cancelling it). Built-in dialog boxes that you can control with VBA are almost always modal.

Modeless dialog boxes do not lock the application, so they can be left open while the user continues working in the application. In this way, they behave like dockers.

Before you can code and design dialog box, you must decide whether to make it modal or modeless.

Choosing between modal and modeless dialog boxes

The kind of dialog box you should provide depends on what you want to achieve.

Modal dialog boxes usually have the following features:
• an OK button — performs the dialog box’s ultimate action and then hides the dialog box. It is the default button.
• a Cancel button — dismisses the dialog box without performing the dialog box’s action. The Close button in the upper-right corner of the dialog box provides the same functionality.
Some modal dialog boxes require an **Apply** button that performs the dialog box’s action without making it permanent, such that cancelling the dialog box undoes the action.

If the dialog box is in the style of a wizard, it should have a **Previous** button and a **Next** button, as well as a **Cancel** button. On the first page of the sequence, the **Previous** button should be disabled (that is, have its **Enabled** property set to **False**), while on the last page, the **Next** button should become the **Finish** button to indicate that the final page has been reached.

Modeless dialog boxes usually have the following features:

- an **Apply** or **Create** button — performs the dialog box’s action and can, in fact, be specially labelled to described the dialog box’s action. This button should be the default.
- a **Close** button — closes the dialog box. This button is used after the user has applied the desired action.

After you have chosen whether your dialog box should be modal or modeless, you are ready to start setting it up.

**Setting up dialog boxes**

To set up a customized dialog box for use in your VBA solution, you use the Form Designer in the VB Editor. The Form Designer provides easy access to the tools for coding and designing a form.

You can access the Form Designer by creating a new, blank form.

For information on accessing the **User Form** toolbar, which you can use when designing a form, see “Using the toolbars in the VB Editor” on page 152.

You can test a form at any time by running it.

**To create a blank form**

- In the Project Explorer, right-click the project to which you want to add a dialog box, and then click **Insert** ➔ **UserForm**.

To change the title of the form, click the form to select it, and then in the Properties window, change the **Caption** property.
It is highly recommended that you give each form a unique, descriptive name. You can do this from the Properties window, but remember to follow the rules for naming variables in VBA.

To test a form by running it

• Press F5.

Coding dialog boxes for VBA macros

Custom dialog boxes can be set as either modal or modeless by using the Modal parameter of the form’s Show method.

For example, the form frmFooForm can be displayed with the following code:

    frmFooForm.Show

Because the optional parameter Modal has, by default, the value vbModal (or 1), this code creates a modal dialog box.

If the Modal parameter is set to vbModeless (or 0), as in the following example, then a modeless dialog box is created:

    frmFooForm.Show vbModeless

To open a dialog box from a macro that is available from within the application itself, you must create a public sub within a VBA module; if a sub exists within a form’s code or within a class module, it cannot be made available from within the application. The sub you create cannot take any parameters.

The following example sub would launch frmFooForm as a modeless form:

    Public Sub showFooForm()
        frmFooForm.Show vbModeless
    End Sub

When a form loads, it triggers its own UserForm_Initialize event. From this event handler, you should initialize all the controls on the form that must be initialized.

It is possible to launch one or more other forms from within the current form by using its Show member function:

    UserForm2.Show vbModal 

However, VBA does not return control until all open forms have been unloaded.

Designing dialog boxes for VBA macros

The Form Designer toolbox is the main utility you’ll use when designing dialog boxes. It lets you add controls to a form by dragging the appropriate control from the toolbox to the form.
The Form Designer toolbox lets you add the following controls to a form:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Icon</th>
<th>Control</th>
<th>Function</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="Label Icon" /></td>
<td>Label</td>
<td>Lets you provide the user with static text (for example, instructions or captions)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="TextBox Icon" /></td>
<td>TextBox</td>
<td>Lets you provide an area into which the user can type text. For more information, see “Text box controls” on page 167.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="ComboBox Icon" /></td>
<td>ComboBox</td>
<td>Lets you provide a list from which the user can select an item and (optionally) into which the user can also type text. For more information, see “Combination (“combo”) box controls and list box controls” on page 167.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="ListBox Icon" /></td>
<td>ListBox</td>
<td>Lets you provide a list from which the user can select multiple items. For more information, see “Combination (“combo”) box controls and list box controls” on page 167.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="CheckBox Icon" /></td>
<td>CheckBox</td>
<td>Lets you provide a check box that the user can enable (by clicking to insert a check mark into it) or disable (by clicking to remove the check mark from it), or that can be grayed (so as to make it unavailable to the user)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="OptionButton Icon" /></td>
<td>OptionButton</td>
<td>Lets you provide a &quot;radio button&quot; that is linked to other radio buttons with the same GroupName property, such that the user can enable only one of them at a time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="ToggleButton Icon" /></td>
<td>ToggleButton</td>
<td>Lets you provide a button that the user can click to toggle (such that it does or does not appear pressed)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="Frame Icon" /></td>
<td>Frame</td>
<td>Lets you group items together: items drawn on the frame move with the frame</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="CommandButton Icon" /></td>
<td>CommandButton</td>
<td>Lets you provide a button that the user can click to commit an assigned action. For more information, see “Button controls” on page 168.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="TabStrip Icon" /></td>
<td>TabStrip</td>
<td>Lets you provide the user with separate views of related controls</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
More detailed information follows for some of these controls.

The Form Designer toolbox also features a **Pick tool**, which lets you select and move the controls on a form.

For more information about any one of these controls (or about the other controls supported by VBA), draw the control in a form and then press **F1** to display a Help topic for it.

**Text box controls**

Text boxes (that is, TextBox controls) are the mainstay of user input. They are simple to use, quick to program, and very flexible.

To set the text in a text box when initializing it, set the TextBox control’s `Text` (default or implicit) property:

```vba
txtWidth.Text = "3"
```

```vba
txtHeight = "1"
```

To get the value of a TextBox control, get its `Text` property:

```vba
Call SetSize(txtWidth.Text, txtHeight.Text)
```

**Combination (“combo”) box controls and list box controls**

In a combo box (that is, a ComboBox control), the user can either choose an item from the list or type into the text box. You can prevent users from being able to type into a ComboBox control by setting its `Style` property to `fmStyleDropDownList`.

In a list box (that is, a ListBox control), the user can choose one or more items (from, typically, between three and ten items).

To populate a list of any type, you must call the list’s member function `AddItem`. This function takes two parameters: the string or numerical value, and the position in the list. The position parameter is optional, so omitting it inserts the item at the last position in the list. For example, the following code populates the list `ComboBox1` with four items:

```vba
ComboBox1.AddItem 1
ComboBox1.AddItem 2
ComboBox1.AddItem 3
ComboBox1.AddItem 0, 0
```
To test which item is selected when the OK button is clicked, test the list’s ListIndex property. To get the value of a selected item’s caption, test the Text property for the ComboBox or ListBox:

```vba
Dim retList As String
retList = ComboBox1.Text
```

**Button controls**

As previously discussed, you can add a button to a form by using the CommandButton control. Click the form to add a default-sized button, or drag to create one to your own specifications. Click the caption to edit it, or select the button and edit its Caption property in the Properties window. You might also want to change the name of the button to something more descriptive, such as buttonOK or buttonCancel.

![Designing buttons in the Form Designer](image)

Most forms have an OK button and a Cancel button. However, no button functions until its form has code for handling the button’s click event. (This is because VBA forms are event-driven.)

The Cancel button is the simplest control: it must dismiss the form without doing anything else. To add a cancel action to a Cancel button, double-click the button from within the Form Designer to display its code in the Code window. This creates a new subroutine called cmdCancel_Click:

```vba
Sub cmdCancel_Click()
    UserForm.Close
End Sub
```
The Code window with code for a Cancel button

The following code, if applied to a **Cancel** button, instructs the form to be dismissed when the button is clicked:

```vba
Private Sub cmdCancel_Click()
    Unload Me
End Sub
```

If you continue by setting the form’s **Cancel** property to **True**, you’ll find that when the user presses **Escape**, the `cmdCancel_Click` event is triggered and the code you’ve provided unloads the form.

Similarly, you can select the **OK** button and set its **Default** property to **True**, so that when the user presses **Enter** to activate the form, the **OK** button’s event handler is called; the **OK** button’s click-event handler performs the form’s functionality and then unloads the form.

If the form is used to set the size of the selected shapes by setting their width and height, then the **OK** button’s click-event handler could resemble the following code sample (which assumes you have already created two text boxes called `txtWidth` and `txtHeight`):

```vba
Private Sub buttonOK_Click()
    Me.Hide
    Call SetSize(txtWidth.Text, txtHeight.Text)
    Unload Me
End Sub
```

From inside the form’s own code module, the form object is implicit, and so all the controls can be simply accessed by name. From other modules, the controls must be accessed via their full name, which would be `UserForm1.buttonOK`. 
Image (bitmap) controls

The Image control is used to place graphics on the form. The image (a bitmap) is contained in the Picture property, so you can either load an RGB image from a file (such as a GIF, JPEG, or Windows Bitmap BMP file) or paste one into the property.

At run time, new images can be loaded into the Image control by changing the Picture property — by using the VBA function LoadPicture and providing a path to the new image file — as in the following example:

```vba
Image1.Picture = LoadPicture("C:\Images\NewImage.gif")
```

Providing help for VBA macros

It is highly recommended that you provide users with documentation for your macros.

One solution is to provide them with a Readme file or a printed manual. Another option is to build instructions directly into the dialog box, but this uses up valuable on-screen “real estate”. Yet another alternative is to create a Help file, but this requires tools and a fair amount of additional work.

For these reasons, you may instead want to provide help in the form of plain-text file. If you create a registry value when the project is installed that points to the location of the file, you can use the following function to open it:

```vba
Public Sub launchNotepad(file As String)
    Shell "Notepad.exe" & " " & file, vbNormalFocus
End Sub
```

Pass the full path to the text file, such as `C:\ReadMe.txt`, in the parameter `file`.

A much more powerful — but still easily created — solution is to use HTML. By using HTML, you can include graphics in your documentation, and you can also direct the user to a specific location on the page by using “hash” references (such as `index.html#middle`). If you know where the HTML file is installed, you can use the following function to open it:

```vba
' Put this Declare statement before all Subs and Functions!
Declare Function ShellExecute Lib "shell32.dll" _
    Alias "ShellExecuteA" (ByVal hwnd As Long, _
    ByVal lpOperation As String, ByVal lpFile As String, _
    ByVal lpParameters As String, ByVal lpDirectory As String, _
    ByVal nShowCmd As Long) As Long
Public Sub launchBrowser(url As String)
    ShellExecute 0, vbNullString, url, vbNullString, vbNullString, 5
End Sub
```

Simply pass the file name (for example, `C:\Program Files\ReadMe.htm`) or URL in the parameter `url`. 
Organizing and deploying VBA macros

When you’ve finished designing your VBA macro, you can make it available to other WordPerfect Office users.

This chapter covers the following topics:
• “Organizing VBA macros” on page 171
• “Deploying VBA macros” on page 171

Organizing VBA macros
To make your VBA macros easy to deploy, it’s a good idea to organize them.

The best way to organize and maintain your macros is to use a separate module for each macro, and then group related macros into a single project file.

To help the user find the entry point to your macros, it’s a good idea to place all of the public subs into a single module and then instruct the user how to find them; that way, the macros can be called from within WordPerfect, Quattro Pro, or Presentations.

Deploying VBA macros
You can deploy VBA macros to users for installation by deploying project files.

For more information on deploying macros across an organization, network administrators can refer to the Corel WordPerfect Office Deployment Guide included with their purchase of a license SKU.

Deploying project files
You can explicitly distribute macros as part of a document so that when that document is opened, the user has immediate access to the macros even if they have not installed them. In this way, you can, for example, set up a macro to track how much time has been spent editing the document.

You must devise a mechanism for distributing your project files to users for installation. While it is possible to distribute modules on their own, it is much simpler for your users if you distribute project files instead (so that the users do not have to manually integrate the module into their existing project file).

To deploy a project file
1 Make the project file available to the users.
2 Instruct the users to install the project file.
Glossary

A

**ANSI character set**
The 256 characters of the American National Standards Institute

**any data type**
A data type that accepts more than one data type as input. For example, in the `AppActivate (Windows: Any)` command, the `Windows` parameter accepts a window title (string data type) or a window handle (numeric data type).

**argument**
A variable, constant, or expression required by a command or function

**array**
A set of sequentially indexed elements of the same data type. By default, array indexes are zero-based.

**automation**
The process of recording or scripting a macro

B

**Boolean data type**
A data type that accepts or returns a value of `True` or `False`

C

**callback**
A special function that enables a macro to respond immediately and in specific ways to events, such as enabling a radio button or check box, without waiting until a dialog box is dismissed

**character expression**
Also called a string, one or more characters enclosed in quotation marks. This syntax identifies the characters as text, rather than as a variable.

**class**
The definition (that is, description) of an object

**class module**
A module that contains the definition of a class, including its property and method definitions
**Command Browser**

Also called the Command Inserter, a dialog box that inserts product commands or programming commands (or both) into a macro document

**command name**

A description of a command’s action, such as Font, MarginLeft, Advance, or FootnoteOptions

Command names can execute product features ("product commands") or direct the execution of the macro ("programming commands," such as If, Else, or End If). The Command Inserter lists programming commands and product commands separately, but you can choose which list you want to display.

**constant**

A named item that keeps a constant value while a macro is being executed

**control statement**

A macro feature that alters the sequential execution of commands

**collection**

A set of objects

**constant**

A named item that keeps a constant value while a macro is being executed

**D**

**data type**

The set of values that a variable can store. A data type represents information that is needed by a parameter or returned by a command (as a “return value”).

The available data types are Boolean, enumeration, label, measurement, numeric, string, variant, and any.

In the command syntax, data types are displayed in italics. For example, the enumerations for the Rotation parameter of BoxCaptionRotation are Degrees90!, Degrees 180!, Degrees 270!, and None!. Only these enumerations can replace the data type in the command syntax.

**DLL (Dynamic Link Library) file**

A library of functions and procedures that can be called from a macro

**drop-down list**

A type of list available to a Combo Box control. Also called a “list box.”

**E**

**enumerated type (enumeration)**

An option provided by the program — such as a style, type, method, or state — that lists all the possible values for the variables that use it. Also called an “enumerated type.”
Enumerations end with an exclamation point.

For example, the `DisplayMode` parameter accepts only `Text!`, `Graphics!`, or `FullPage!` as an enumeration. In WordPerfect, `On!`, `Heading8Style!`, and `DefFlushRight!` are enumerations used by different commands.

**enumeration data type**
A data type that accepts an enumeration

**event**
A noun that acts as something taking place in an object and that is triggered by an action (such as a click, key press, or system timer). The action is recognized by a form or control.

**event-driven programming**
A form of programming, such as Visual Basic for Applications, in which code is executed in response to events. By contrast, in traditional procedural programming, the program starts at line 1 and executes line by line.

**event handler**
A subroutine that is programmed to cause the application to respond to a specific event

**expression**
An element that represents values. An expression can be arithmetic, numeric, measurement, relational, logical, bitwise, or character (that is, a string).

**F**

**function**
A procedure that performs a given task in a macro and that can be used to return a value. A function procedure begins with a `Function` statement and ends with an `End Function` statement. In VBA, functions do not need to be declared before they are used, nor before they are defined.

**G**

**global value**
A value that applies to a given project in its entirety

**L**

**label**
A subroutine similar to a procedure or function. A label generally contains one or more statements followed by `Return` or `Quit`.

**label data type**
A data type that accepts a label
macro
A scripted or recorded set of actions that can be repeatedly invoked within an application.

Macro toolbar
A toolbar that contains tools for writing and editing macros. It features buttons for saving, compiling, inserting macro commands, and so on.

measurement data type
A data type that accepts a measurement value in inches, millimeters, picas, WP units, and so on. For example, 72P (points) is equal to 1I (inch) and to 2.54C (centimeters).

All measurement return values are returned in WordPerfect units. Necessary unit conversions are done internally when comparing two measurement values. Recorded macros use the units specified in the application preferences. When specifying a measurement value in a product command parameter, WordPerfect units (w) are assumed unless other units are specified in the parameter or with the DefaultUnits command.

measurement expression
A number followed by a unit of measure (", i, c, m, p, w)

method
An operation that an object can have performed on itself.

modal dialog box
A dialog box that must be acted upon before the user can resume the macro. The application is locked until the dialog box is dismissed, either by submitting it or by cancelling it. Built-in dialog boxes that you can control with VBA are almost always modal.

modeless dialog box
A dialog box that does not lock the application, such that it can be left open while the user continues working in the application. In this way, modeless dialog boxes behave like dockers.

module
A set of declarations followed by procedures.

numeric data type
A data type that accepts a numeric expression.

numeric expression
Also called a “numeric,” a number (such as the number of seconds, a line number, or an outline level) on which mathematical operations can be performed. Numeric expressions are not enclosed in quotation marks.
Object
An instance of a class. An object can be a parent to child objects.

Object model
The hierarchy of objects within an application and their relationship to each other within the paradigm. Each object within an object model is defined by a property, method, or event — or by a combination of each. An object responds to an action through the use of written code.

An object model offers a high-level structure of the relationship between parent and child objects. Without an object model, VBA cannot gain access to the objects in the document, nor query or change an application’s documents.

For example, the Document object represents the beginning of the object hierarchy in WordPerfect. Starting with the Document object, you can drill down and navigate through the object model until you find the desired object. To reference an object with Visual Basic code, you can separate each level of the object hierarchy with the dot operator (.).

Object-oriented programming
A form of programming that emphasizes creating and using objects.

OLE (Object Linking and Embedding)
A feature that copies information from one document to another, “embedding” it through a “live” link. When the original document changes, the embedded copy reflects the changes.

OLE object command
An item, also called a “method,” that performs tasks on an OLE object in a specific OLE automation server.

OLE object commands are specific for each object, such as Excel.Application or Excel.Workbooks. They perform various functions on that object.

OLE object commands that return information about an object are called “properties.” Many properties have parameters as well as return values. In addition, many properties can be assigned a value by placing them on the left side of the assignment symbol (:=), similarly to the name of a variable.

Operator
A symbol or word that performs a function on one or more expressions. Operators compare expressions, link words together, and perform mathematical functions.

Parameter
An optional command element. For example, InhibitInput (State: Off!) works just the same as InhibitInput (Off!).
Some product commands have no parameters; their syntax is usually written with empty parameters, such as PosScreenUp(). Similarly, some programming commands and WordPerfect system variables have no parameters; their syntax is the command name alone, such as \texttt{PAUSE} and \texttt{?FeatureBar}.

In this documentation, italics indicate parameter names or types to be replaced with data. For example, the syntax of \texttt{GraphicsLineLength} is as follows:

\begin{verbatim}
GraphicsLineLength (Length: measurement)
\end{verbatim}

After you replace \texttt{measurement} with a number, the command might be

\begin{verbatim}
GraphicsLineLength (Length: 2I)
\end{verbatim}

or

\begin{verbatim}
GraphicsLineLength (2I)
\end{verbatim}

Be sure to enclose parameters in parentheses. A missing parenthesis, either opening or closing, is a common error that prevents macros from compiling.

Spaces between command names and the opening parenthesis of the parameter section and after semicolons in parameters are optional.

You can separate multiple parameters with semicolons ( ; ). If you omit an optional parameter, be sure to include the semicolon in the syntax to keep following parameters in their correct positions, as in this example:

\begin{verbatim}
AbbreviationExpand (AbbreviationName:; Template: PersonalLibrary!)
\end{verbatim}

or

\begin{verbatim}
AbbreviationExpand (; PersonalLibrary!)
\end{verbatim}

You can enclose repeating parameters in braces, as in this example:

\begin{verbatim}
CASE (<Test>: Any; { <Case>: Any; <Label>: label; Case: Any; <Label>: <Label>...})
\end{verbatim}

When data is supplied, the command could be

\begin{verbatim}
CASE (vChoice; { 1; Exclaim; 2; Info; 3; Question; 4; Stop; 5; QuitMacro}; QuitMacro)
\end{verbatim}

\textbf{passing by reference}

The act of passing an argument to a function or subroutine by using a reference to the original. By default, function and subroutine parameters are passed by reference, but if you want to explicitly annotate the code to indicate that an argument is being passed by reference, you can prefix the argument with \texttt{ByRef}.

\textbf{passing by value}

The act of passing an argument to a function or subroutine by using a copy of the original. To indicate that you want to pass an argument by value, prefix the argument with \texttt{ByVal}.

\textit{PerfectScript}

An application used to record, play, compile, convert, and edit macros. PerfectScript is used to build or edit dialog boxes for macros.

\textit{product command}

A command name that is specific to each application (such as WordPerfect or Presentations) and that performs various functions in that application.
For example, product commands (such as InitialCodesStyleDlg) can display a dialog box; specify settings such as styles (BorderBottomLine), user preferences (PrefZoom), or attributes (Font); turn features on and off (InhibitInput or TableCellIgnoreCalculation); perform actions such as inserting a file (FileInsert) or code (PrinterCommand), renaming a bookmark (BookmarkRename), converting comments to text (CommentConvert), or moving the insertion point (PosColBottom); or play macros that are included with the application (FontDnShippingMacro).

Product commands that report information about the state of an application or feature (that is, provide a “return value”) are sometimes called “system variables.” In WordPerfect, system variables begin with a question mark (for example, ?ColumnWidth). In Presentations, they begin with Env (for example, EnvPaths). Some system variables in Presentations have parameters as well as return values.

The most common data types in product commands are string, enumeration, and numeric.

**product prefix**
A two-character expression that specifies a product for a macro command

**programming command**
A command name that works across applications and that controls or returns information about applications and feature functions.

Programming commands generally control macro functions, such as by specifying conditions under which other macro commands or statements operate (CASE, IF ELSE ENDIF, SWITCH ENDSWITCH); repeating macro commands or statements a specified number of times or until certain conditions are met (FOR ENFOR, REPEAT UNTIL, WHILE ENDWHILE); or invoking or jumping to a specified subroutine (“statement block”) with CALL or GO.

Programming commands are frequently variables.

**prompt**
A dialog box box that displays information for the user

**property**
A characteristic of a class. Properties that are fixed by the design of the class are called “read-only.”

**R**

**relational expression**
An expression that evaluates parameters with only two possible states: TRUE and FALSE

**run-time**
The period during which a macro is executed. Run-time errors occur during macro execution. Run-time options are application start-up settings, such as the macro’s default directory.
S

**scope**
The visibility of a data type, procedure, or object

**shortcut object**
A syntactical replacement for the long-hand version of an object

**string**
Also called a character expression, one or more characters enclosed in double quotation marks. This syntax identifies the characters as text, rather than as a variable.

Strings can include numbers. Here is a sample string:

```vba
Type ("1") and MESSAGEBOX (vStatus; "VAR" + x; "Continue to next variable?" ; IconQuestion! |YesNo!!)
```

**string data type**
A data type that accepts a string

The string data type represents text that you provide, such as a filename, a dialog box control name, message box text, or a character sequence to insert into a document.

**subroutine (sub)**
A procedure that performs a given task in a macro but that cannot be used to return a value. A subroutine procedure begins with a `Sub` statement and ends with an `End Sub` statement. In VBA, subroutines do not need to be declared before they are used, nor before they are defined.

**syntax**
The grammar or sequence for assembling commands

T

**toggle command**
A command that switches between states

For example, the WordPerfect Bold command can be On! or Off!. If On! or Off! is not specified, Bold “toggles” between the two states each time it is called; if Bold is Off!, it is turned On!, while if Bold is On!, it is turned Off!.

**token ID**
The name of a macro command (such as `InvokeDialog`)

U

**user-defined dialog box**
A custom dialog box created with Dialog programming commands that display options for user input
V

value set member
A value in an enumeration list

variable
An item that can be created (or “declared”) for the purposes of storing data. The built-in data types are Byte, Boolean, Integer, Long, Single, Double, String, Variant, and several other less-used types including Date, Decimal, and Object. If a variable is not declared before it is used, the compiler interprets it as a Variant.

A variable name must begin with a letter but is not case-sensitive. (All variables in this documentation’s examples begin with v.) Variables can include any combination of letters or numbers up to 50 characters. For example, you could “assign” the value C:\COREL\WPO\ to variable vPath, and then substitute the variable for the path in the rest of the macro.

You can change the value of a variable. If variable vNmbr equals 5, then the expression vNmbr := vNmbr + 1 results in vNmbr equaling 6.

variant data type
The data type for all variables that are not declared as another type (such as Dim, Private, Public, or Static). The variant data type has no type-declaration character.

Visual Basic for Applications (VBA)
A built-in programming language that can automate repetitive functions and create intelligent solutions in WordPerfect, Quattro Pro, and Presentations

W

window
The application area that contains a title bar, menu bar, and application bar, and that may contain a property bar, scroll bar, toolbar, and ruler. The Equation Editor window has separate editing and display areas called “panes.”

window handle
A unique identifier for a window or control
## Index

### A
- aligning dialog-box controls .................. 95
- animating
  - PerfectScript macros ..................... 123
  - PerfectScript macros, settings ........ 109
- arithmetic expressions
  - PerfectScript ............................ 35
- arithmetic operators
  - using with PerfectScript ............... 23
- arrays, macro
  - collapsing in Variables list .......... 121
  - declaring ............................. 141
  - expanding in Variables list .......... 121
  - passing ................................ 52
  - precautions for ....................... 69
  - working with ........................... 18
- assignment operators
  - using with PerfectScript ............... 22
- assignment statements
  - using in PerfectScript ............... 42

### B
- bitmap controls
  - using with PerfectScript ............... 85
  - using with VBA ........................ 170
- bitwise expressions
  - PerfectScript ............................ 37
- bitwise operators
  - using with PerfectScript ............... 28
  - using with VBA ........................ 144
- Boolean comparison and assignment
  - using with VBA ........................ 144
- breakpoints
  - enabling/disabling, in PerfectScript ... 118
  - executing PerfectScript tokens ....... 119
  - logging PerfectScript events .......... 118
  - navigating, in PerfectScript .......... 118
  - removing, from PerfectScript .......... 118
  - setting, in PerfectScript ............. 117
  - using, for PerfectScript debugging ..... 115
  - using, for VBA debugging .............. 159
- button controls
  - using with PerfectScript ............... 86
  - using with VBA ........................ 168

### C
- C
  - vs. VBA ................................ 137
- C++
  - vs. VBA ................................ 137
- Call Stack window
  - displaying .............................. 160
  - using .................................. 160
- Callback Queue window
  - display options ....................... 115
- callbacks, PerfectScript
  - debugging .............................. 125
  - dialog-box setup ....................... 96
  - looping ................................ 97
  - queue, listing ......................... 115
  - understanding ........................ 58
- calling statements, PerfectScript
  - Call command ........................... 59
  - creating, from subroutines .......... 58
  - Go command ............................. 59
  - subroutines ............................ 46
  - subroutines, naming ................. 59
  - using .................................. 46
- Case conditions
  - PerfectScript ............................ 43
- character expressions
  - PerfectScript ............................ 34
- check box controls
  - using with PerfectScript ............... 86
- closing
  - dialog boxes, with PerfectScript ...... 102
- Code window
  - using .................................. 150
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Code, PerfectScript</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>displaying dialog boxes</td>
<td>101</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>editing</td>
<td>71</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>navigating while debugging</td>
<td>122</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scripting</td>
<td>71</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>searching in Debugger</td>
<td>124</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>writing</td>
<td>71</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Code, VBA</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>creating dialog boxes</td>
<td>165</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>formatting automatically</td>
<td>150</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stepping through</td>
<td>159</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Color wheel controls</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>using with PerfectScript</td>
<td>87</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Combo box controls</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>using with PerfectScript</td>
<td>87</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>using with VBA</td>
<td>167</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Command Browser</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>displaying</td>
<td>65</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Help for macro commands</td>
<td>66</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>inserting macro commands</td>
<td>73</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Command Inserter</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>understanding</td>
<td>71</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>using</td>
<td>73</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Command statements</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>using in PerfectScript</td>
<td>37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Comment statements</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>using in PerfectScript</td>
<td>60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Comments, macro</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PerfectScript</td>
<td>60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VBA</td>
<td>142</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Compiling</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PerfectScript macros</td>
<td>74</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PerfectScript macros, errors</td>
<td>74</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PerfectScript macros, settings</td>
<td>67</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PerfectScript macros, with Debugger</td>
<td>110</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>understanding compilers</td>
<td>74</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Condition Handlers window</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>display options</td>
<td>114</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Conditional statements</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>using in PerfectScript</td>
<td>42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Conditions, PerfectScript</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Case</td>
<td>43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>If</td>
<td>43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Switch</td>
<td>44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Constant variables</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>using in PerfectScript</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Constants</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PerfectScript</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Converting</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PerfectScript macros</td>
<td>69</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Copying</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dialog box controls</td>
<td>93</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dialog boxes</td>
<td>82</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Corel SCRIPT</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>recording macros in</td>
<td>68</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Counter controls</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>using with PerfectScript</td>
<td>87</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cursor position</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>debugging PerfectScript macros</td>
<td>123</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Custom controls</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>using with PerfectScript</td>
<td>88</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Date controls</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>using with PerfectScript</td>
<td>88</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DDE</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Presentations conversations</td>
<td>63</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quattro Pro conversations</td>
<td>62</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>understanding</td>
<td>62</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WordPerfect conversations</td>
<td>62</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Debugger, PerfectScript</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>breakpoints, working with</td>
<td>115</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Call History list</td>
<td>106</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Callback Queue window</td>
<td>113</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>compiling macros with</td>
<td>110</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Condition Handlers window</td>
<td>113</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>debugging macros with</td>
<td>108</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dialog List window</td>
<td>112</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>getting started</td>
<td>105</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>information windows</td>
<td>110</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Label Table window</td>
<td>111</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Macro Header window</td>
<td>114</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Macro Info List window</td>
<td>113</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>menu</td>
<td>105</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>navigating macro code</td>
<td>122</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Product Table window</td>
<td>112</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>settings</td>
<td>109</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Source list</td>
<td>106</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>State line</td>
<td>106</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stopping with breakpoints</td>
<td>117</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
setting up dialog box controls ............ 84
setting up dialog boxes .................... 81
testing dialog boxes ....................... 101
understanding .............................. 79
Dialog List window
        display options ...................... 114
discarding variables
        PerfectScript code .................... 17
        PerfectScript debugging .......... 122
doing dialog boxes
        using PerfectScript ................. 102
docking
        VB Editor toolbars .................... 152
drop-down list controls
        using with PerfectScript ............ 90
Dynamic Data Exchange (DDE) .............. 62

E
edit box controls
        using with PerfectScript ............ 88
editing macros
        PerfectScript .......................... 71
enumerated types
        declaring, in VBA ..................... 142
errors, macro
        debugging .............................. 124
        run-time ................................ 76
        troubleshooting compiles ............ 74
evaluating to return values ............... 41
event logs
        PerfectScript breakpoints ............ 117
execution points
        listing PerfectScript labels ........ 114
expressions, PerfectScript ............... 9
        constants in .......................... 21
        operators in .......................... 21
        types of ................................ 32
        variables in ............................ 10
external applications
        PerfectScript macro access ........... 60

F
filename box controls
        using with PerfectScript ............ 89
floating
        VB Editor toolbars .................... 152
fonts
        PerfectScript dialog boxes .......... 83
For loops
        using in PerfectScript ............... 45
Form Designer
        using ................................. 165
formatting
        PerfectScript macros ................. 72
        VBA code, automatically ............. 150
forms, VBA
        buttons ................................ 168
        combination boxes .................... 167
        creating ................................ 164
        images .................................. 170
        list boxes ............................. 167
        testing ................................ 165
        text boxes ................................ 167
frame controls
        using with PerfectScript ............ 89
functions, PerfectScript
        calling ................................ 53
        creating ................................ 48
        passing arrays to ..................... 52
        passing variables to .................. 51
        storing ................................ 55
        structuring ................................ 53
        understanding .......................... 48
        variables in ............................ 49
functions, VBA
        building ................................ 141
        enumerated types in .................. 142

G
global macros (VBA)
        creating ................................ 157
global variables
        using with PerfectScript ............. 14
GMS files
        deploying ................................ 171
grid
        positioning PerfectScript controls with ... 95
group box controls
        using with PerfectScript ............ 89
Index

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Grouping</th>
<th>dialog box controls, for PerfectScript</th>
<th>95</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>H</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Help files</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>macro commands</td>
<td></td>
<td>66</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PerfectScript utility</td>
<td></td>
<td>66</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>providing, for VBA macros</td>
<td></td>
<td>170</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>horizontal line controls</td>
<td>using with PerfectScript</td>
<td>90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>I</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>If conditions</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PerfectScript</td>
<td></td>
<td>43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>image controls</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>using with VBA</td>
<td></td>
<td>170</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>images</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>adding, to VBA forms</td>
<td></td>
<td>170</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Immediate window</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>displaying</td>
<td></td>
<td>160</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>using</td>
<td></td>
<td>160</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>information windows in Debugger</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>displaying or hiding</td>
<td></td>
<td>114</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>using</td>
<td></td>
<td>110</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>initializing</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>variables, in PerfectScript</td>
<td></td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>input boxes</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>providing, for VBA</td>
<td></td>
<td>145</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>J</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Java</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vs. VBA</td>
<td></td>
<td>137</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JavaScript</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>recording macros in</td>
<td></td>
<td>68</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vs. VBA</td>
<td></td>
<td>137</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>K</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>keywords, PerfectScript</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>precautions for</td>
<td></td>
<td>69</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>L</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Label Table window</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>display options</td>
<td></td>
<td>114</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>M</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>macro commands</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>components of</td>
<td></td>
<td>38</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| labels, PerfectScript     | calling                          | 47 |
|                          | creating                         | 47 |
|                          | listing at execution point      | 114|
|                          | structuring                      | 48 |
|                          | understanding                    | 47 |
| learning                 | PerfectScript macros             | 63 |
| line controls            | using with PerfectScript         | 90 |
|                          | using with VBA                  | 167|
| line numbers             | searching, for PerfectScript     | 124|
|                          | lines of code                   |    |
|                          | VBA, ending                      | 142|
| list box controls        | using with PerfectScript         | 90 |
|                          | using with VBA                  | 167|
| list controls            | using with PerfectScript         | 90 |
|                          | using with VBA                  | 167|
| listing files, PerfectScript | generating                  | 109|
|                          | understanding                    | 108|
| local variables          | using with PerfectScript         | 12 |
| Locals window            | displaying                       | 161|
|                          | using                           | 160|
| log files                | PerfectScript breakpoint events  | 117|
| logical expressions      | PerfectScript                    | 36 |
|                          | logical operators               |    |
|                          | using with PerfectScript         | 26 |
|                          | using with VBA                  | 144|
| loop statements          | using in PerfectScript           | 45 |
|                          | For                              | 45 |
|                          | Repeat                           | 45 |
|                          | While                            | 46 |

---

Index
inserting, in PerfectScript ............... 73
naming conventions ....................... 39
parameter conventions .................... 39
Quattro Pro, converting to PerfectScript 132
return-value conventions .................. 41
understanding ............................ 37
Macro Header window
display options .......................... 115
Macro Info List window
display options .......................... 115
macro libraries
  PerfectScript .......................... 55
macro resources
  PerfectScript .......................... 63
macro statements
  PerfectScript .......................... 6
macro structure
  PerfectScript .......................... 6
macro syntax
  PerfectScript .......................... 6
macros
  converting to PerfectScript .......... 69
glossary of terms ......................... 173
native (Quattro Pro) macros ............... 127
PerfectScript, working with ............. 3
Quattro Pro macros, working with ......... 127
VBA, working with ....................... 133
  working with ............................ 1
measurement expressions
  PerfectScript .......................... 33
memory allocation
  VBA ........................................ 143
memory pointers
  VBA ........................................ 143
message boxes
  providing, for VBA ...................... 145
migrating
  PerfectScript macros ................... 69
modal dialog boxes
  PerfectScript .......................... 79
  VBA ........................................ 163
modeless dialog boxes
  PerfectScript .......................... 79
  VBA ........................................ 163
modules, VBA ............................. 157

N
native Quattro Pro macros
  working with ....................... 127
numeric expressions
  PerfectScript .......................... 33

O
Object Browser
  Class list ............................... 153
  Information window ..................... 155
  Member list .............................. 154
  search controls ......................... 155
  using ...................................... 152
object model, VBA
  Presentations ........................... 139
  Quattro Pro .............................. 139
  understanding ........................... 138
  WordPerfect .............................. 139
object-header information
  PerfectScript display options .......... 115
objects
  VBA hierarchy ........................... 138
OLE Automation
  understanding ........................... 60
OLE objects
  working with ............................ 61
opening
  dialog boxes, with PerfectScript ....... 101
operators
  arithmetic (PerfectScript) .............. 23
  assignment (PerfectScript) ............. 22
  bitwise (PerfectScript) ................. 28
  bitwise (VBA) ............................ 144
  Boolean (VBA) ............................ 144
  logical .................................... 26
  logical (VBA) ............................ 144
  PerfectScript ............................ 21
  precedence (PerfectScript) ............. 30
  relational (PerfectScript) ............. 24
organizing VBA macros .......................... 171

P
parameters, PerfectScript
  syntax ........................................ 40
  understanding ................................ 39
passing by reference
  VBA ............................................. 143
passing by value
  VBA ............................................. 143
pausing
  PerfectScript macros ......................... 76
  PerfectScript macros, during debug .......... 110
PerfectScript macros
  compiling ...................................... 74
  converting from Quattro Pro macros ...... 131
  creating ...................................... 69
  debugging .................................... 69
  dialog boxes for ............................... 79
  editing ....................................... 71
  editing, settings ................................ 67
  external applications, accessing .......... 60
  formatting .................................... 72
  getting started ................................ 65
  learning resources ............................. 63
  migrating legacy ............................... 69
  playing ....................................... 76
  recording ..................................... 70
  settings, general .............................. 66
  understanding ................................ 5
  user-friendliness ............................... 77
  working with ................................ 3
  writing ....................................... 71
PerfectScript syntax
  macro structure ............................... 6
  macro syntax .................................. 6
PerfectScript utility
  Command Browser, displaying ............. 65
  Debugger ..................................... 105
  Dialog Editor ................................ 79
  Dialog Editor, displaying .................. 66
  Help for controls .............................. 66
  Help for macro commands .................... 66
  quitting ....................................... 66
  settings ....................................... 66
  starting ....................................... 65
toolbar settings ................................. 68
  using .......................................... 65
persistent variables
  PerfectScript .................................. 15
playing
  PerfectScript macros ........................ 76
  PerfectScript macros, errors .............. 76
  PerfectScript macros, settings .......... 67
  VBA macros ................................... 158
pop-up button controls
  using with PerfectScript ................... 86
pop-up list controls
  using with PerfectScript ................... 90
Presentations
  DDE conversations ............................ 63
  VBA object model .............................. 139
procedural macros
  PerfectScript ................................ 7
procedures, PerfectScript
  calling ......................................... 53
  creating ...................................... 48
  passing arrays to ................................ 52
  passing variables to .......................... 51
  storing ........................................ 55
  structuring .................................... 54
  understanding ................................ 48
  variables in ................................... 49
Product Table window
  display options ............................... 114
progress indicator controls
  using with PerfectScript ................... 91
Project Explorer
  displaying ...................................... 149
  using .......................................... 148
project files, VBA
  deploying ..................................... 171
Properties window
  displaying ...................................... 150
  using .......................................... 149
push button controls
  using with PerfectScript ................... 86
Q
Quattro Pro
  DDE conversations ............................ 62
native macro language .................. 129  
VBA object model ...................... 139  
Quattro Pro (native) macros  
commands, understanding .............. 129  
converting ................................ 131  
creating .................................. 131  
debugging ................................ 131  
editing .................................. 131  
playing .................................. 131  
syntax, understanding .................. 129  
understanding ......................... 129  
working with ............................ 127  
quitng  
PerfectScript utility ................... 66  
R  
radio button controls  
using with PerfectScript ............... 86  
radix expressions  
PerfectScript ......................... 34  
recording  
PerfectScript macros ................... 70  
PerfectScript macros, settings ....... 68  
region commands  
PerfectScript dialog boxes ............ 99  
relational expressions  
PerfectScript ......................... 36  
relational operators  
PerfectScript ......................... 24  
releasing dialog boxes  
using PerfectScript ................... 102  
Repeat loops  
using in PerfectScript ................. 45  
resuming  
PerfectScript macros .................. 76  
PerfectScript macros, during debug 110  
return values, PerfectScript  
evaluating ............................... 41  
handling ............................... 41  
understanding ......................... 41  
running  
PerfectScript macros .................. 76  
PerfectScript macros, settings ....... 67  
VBA macros ............................. 158  
run-time PerfectScript errors ........... 76  
S  
saving  
PerfectScript dialog boxes .......... 84  
scope, VBA ............................. 143  
scripting macros  
PerfectScript ......................... 71  
scroll bar controls  
using with PerfectScript ............... 91  
SDK  
understanding ......................... 63  
searching  
PerfectScript code ..................... 124  
selecting  
PerfectScript controls, multiple ... 92  
PerfectScript controls, single ....... 92  
sequential macros  
PerfectScript ......................... 7  
shortcut objects, VBA ................. 139  
Software Development Kit (SDK)  
understanding ......................... 63  
sorting  
variables in Variables list .......... 120  
starting  
PerfectScript utility ................... 65  
VB Editor ............................... 148  
statements, PerfectScript macro  
assignment ............................ 42  
calling ................................ 46  
command ................................ 37  
comment ................................ 60  
conditional ............................ 42  
expressions in ........................... 9  
loop .................................... 45  
understanding ......................... 6  
static text controls  
using with PerfectScript ............... 91  
stepping through macro code  
PerfectScript ......................... 123  
VBA .................................... 159  
stopping  
PerfectScript debug ................... 110  
PerfectScript debug, with breakpoints . 117
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Topic</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PerfectScript macros</td>
<td>76</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>strings</td>
<td>141</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>declaring, in VBA</td>
<td>140</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>structure, PerfectScript</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>subroutines, PerfectScript</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Call command in</td>
<td>59</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>callbacks</td>
<td>58</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>calling statements from</td>
<td>58</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>functions</td>
<td>48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>labels</td>
<td>47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>procedures</td>
<td>48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>understanding</td>
<td>46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>subroutines, VBA</td>
<td>141</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>building</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Switch conditions</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>using in PerfectScript</td>
<td>44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>syntax, PerfectScript</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>command names</td>
<td>39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>macros</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>parameters</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>syntax, VBA</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>checking automatically</td>
<td>151</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>coloring automatically</td>
<td>150</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tab order</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PerfectScript dialog boxes</td>
<td>96</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>testing</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PerfectScript dialog boxes</td>
<td>101</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VBA forms</td>
<td>165</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>text</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>searching macros for</td>
<td>124</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>text box controls</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>using with VBA</td>
<td>167</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>text controls</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>using with PerfectScript</td>
<td>91</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>third-party tokens</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>executing, in PerfectScript</td>
<td>117</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tokens, PerfectScript</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>executing</td>
<td>117</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>executing, during debug</td>
<td>119</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>toolbars, PerfectScript</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>settings</td>
<td>68</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>toolbars, VBA</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>docking</td>
<td>152</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>floating</td>
<td>152</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VB Editor, using</td>
<td>152</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Visual Basic, using</td>
<td>147</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>troubleshooting</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PerfectScript compiles</td>
<td>74</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PerfectScript Debugger</td>
<td>124</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PerfectScript run-time errors</td>
<td>76</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>typing macros</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PerfectScript</td>
<td>71</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>U</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Use File Table window</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>display options</td>
<td>114</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Use files</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>listing</td>
<td>114</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>user interface</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>creating, for PerfectScript macros</td>
<td>79</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>creating, for VBA macros</td>
<td>163</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>variables, PerfectScript</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>collapsing in Variables list</td>
<td>121</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>constant variables</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>creating during debug</td>
<td>121</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>debugging</td>
<td>119</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>declaring</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>determining existence</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>discarding</td>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>displaying in macros</td>
<td>120</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>editing during debug</td>
<td>121</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>expanding in Variables list</td>
<td>121</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>global variables</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>initializing</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>local variables</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>passing</td>
<td>51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>persistent variables</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>refreshing in Variables list</td>
<td>121</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>removing during debug</td>
<td>122</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sorting in Variables list</td>
<td>120</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>understanding</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>using</td>
<td>49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>watching</td>
<td>121</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>variables, VBA</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>declaring</td>
<td>140</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Index
VB Editor
  automatic completion .......................... 151
  Code window .................................... 150
  contextual pop-up lists ......................... 151
  debugging windows .............................. 159
  Form Designer ................................... 165
  Object Browser .................................. 152
  Project Explorer ................................ 148
  Properties window ................................ 149
  starting ........................................ 148
  toolbars ........................................ 152
  using ........................................... 147
VBA automation
  understanding ..................................... 136
VBA macros
  code structure .................................. 140
  converting from Quattro Pro macros ................ 132
  creating ...................................... 157
  debugging ...................................... 159
  deploying ...................................... 171
  dialog boxes for ................................ 163
  global macros .................................. 157
  Help creation ................................... 170
  organizing ...................................... 171
  running ......................................... 158
  understanding ................................... 135
vertical line controls
  using with PerfectScript ....................... 90
viewer controls
  using with PerfectScript ....................... 91
Visual Basic
  recording macros in .............................. 68
Visual Basic for Applications (VBA)
  macros .......................................... 133
  main elements of ................................ 138
  non-programmers ................................ 136
  operators, bitwise ................................ 144
  operators, Boolean .............................. 144
  operators, logical ................................ 144
  programmers .................................... 136
  toolbars ........................................ 147
  understanding ................................... 135
  vs. C and C++ ................................... 137
  vs. Java and JavaScript ......................... 137
  vs. Windows Script Host ......................... 137
  working with .................................... 133

W
  Watches window
    using ........................................... 161
  watching variables
    PerfectScript ................................ 121
  WCL files
    understanding .................................. 108
  While loops
    using in PerfectScript ....................... 46
  Windows Script Host
    vs. VBA ...................................... 137
WordPerfect
  DDE conversations ................................ 62
  VBA object model ................................ 139
writing macros
  PerfectScript ................................... 71